

SiFive S76-MC Core Complex Manual 21G3.02.00

Copyright $\ensuremath{\texttt{@}}$ 2019–2022 by SiFive, Inc. All rights reserved.

SiFive S76-MC Core Complex Manual

Proprietary Notice

Copyright © 2019–2022 by SiFive, Inc. All rights reserved.

SiFive S76-MC Core Complex Manual by SiFive, Inc. is licensed under Attribution-NonCommercialNoDerivatives 4.0 International. To view a copy of this license, visit: http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-nc-nd/4.0

Information in this document is provided "as is," with all faults.

SiFive expressly disclaims all warranties, representations, and conditions of any kind, whether express or implied, including, but not limited to, the implied warranties or conditions of merchantability, fitness for a particular purpose and non-infringement.

SiFive does not assume any liability rising out of the application or use of any product or circuit, and specifically disclaims any and all liability, including without limitation indirect, incidental, special, exemplary, or consequential damages.

SiFive reserves the right to make changes without further notice to any products herein.

Contents

Lis	st of Tables10				
Lia	et o	f Eigu	Irac	15	
LI	st U	ı rıgu	ıres	15	
1	In	trodu	ction	19	
	1.1	Abou	ıt this Document	19	
	1.2	Abou	ıt this Release	20	
	1.3	S76-I	MC Core Complex Overview	20	
	1.4	S7 R	ISC-V Cores	21	
	1.5	Mem	ory System	22	
	1.6	Interr	rupts	22	
	1.7	Debu	ug Support	22	
	1.8	Com	pliance	23	
2			Abbreviations and Terms		
3			C-V Core		
	3.1		oorted Privilege Modes		
	3.2	Instru	uction Memory System		
		3.2.1	Execution Memory Space		
		3.2.2	L1 Instruction Cache		
		3.2.3	Cache Maintenance		
		3.2.4	Coherence with Higher Level Caches		
		3.2.5	Instruction Tightly-Integrated Memory (ITIM)	28	
		3.2.6	Instruction Fetch Unit		
		3.2.7	Branch Prediction		
	3.3		ution Pipeline		
	3.4	Data	Memory System	31	
		3.4.1	L1 Data Cache	32	

4

	3.4.2	Cache Maintenance Operations	32
	3.4.3	L1 Data Cache Coherency	32
	3.4.4	Coherence with Higher Level Caches	32
	3.4.5	Data Local Store (DLS)	33
3.5	Fast I	/O	33
3.6	Atomi	c Memory Operations	33
3.7	Floati	ng-Point Unit (FPU)	34
3.8	Physi	cal Memory Protection (PMP)	34
	3.8.1	PMP Functional Description	34
	3.8.2	PMP Region Locking	35
	3.8.3	PMP Registers	35
	3.8.4	PMP and PMA	37
	3.8.5	PMP Programming Overview	37
	3.8.6	PMP and Paging	39
	3.8.7	PMP Limitations	39
	3.8.8	Behavior for Regions without PMP Protection	39
	3.8.9	Cache Flush Behavior on PMP Protected Region	40
3.9	Hardv	vare Performance Monitor	40
	3.9.1	Performance Monitoring Counters Reset Behavior	40
	3.9.2	Fixed-Function Performance Monitoring Counters	40
	3.9.3	Event-Programmable Performance Monitoring Counters	41
	3.9.4	Event Selector Registers	41
	3.9.5	Event Selector Encodings	43
	3.9.6	Counter-Enable Registers	45
3.10) Port	s	45
	3.10.1	Front Port	45
	3.10.2	Memory Port	46
	3.10.3	Peripheral Port	46
	3.10.4	System Port	46
	_		
Pľ		l Memory Attributes and Memory Map	
4.1	Physi	cal Memory Attributes Overview	47
4.2	Memo	ory Map	49

5	Pr	ograr	nmer's Model	52
	5.1	Base	Instruction Formats	52
	5.2	RV64	II Base Integer Instruction Set	53
		5.2.1	R-Type (Register-Based) Integer Instructions	54
		5.2.2	I-Type Integer Instructions	55
		5.2.3	I-Type Load Instructions	56
		5.2.4	S-Type Store Instructions	57
		5.2.5	Unconditional Jumps	58
		5.2.6	Conditional Branches	59
		5.2.7	Upper-Immediate Instructions	60
		5.2.8	Memory Ordering Operations	60
		5.2.9	Environment Call and Breakpoints	61
		5.2.10	NOP Instruction	61
	5.3	M Ex	tension: Multiplication Operations	61
		5.3.1	Division Operations	62
	5.4	A Ext	tension: Atomic Operations	62
		5.4.1	Atomic Load-Reserve and Store-Conditional Instructions	62
		5.4.2	Atomic Memory Operations (AMOs)	63
	5.5	F Ext	ension: Single-Precision Floating-Point Instructions	64
		5.5.1	Floating-Point Control and Status Registers	64
		5.5.2	Rounding Modes	65
		5.5.3	Single-Precision Floating-Point Load and Store Instructions	65
		5.5.4	Single-Precision Floating-Point Computational Instructions	
		5.5.5	Single-Precision Floating-Point Conversion and Move Instructions	66
		5.5.6	Single-Precision Floating-Point Compare Instructions	69
	5.6	D Ext	tension: Double-Precision Floating-Point Instructions	70
		5.6.1	Double-Precision Floating-Point Load and Store Instructions	70
		5.6.2	Double-Precision Floating-Point Computational Instructions	71
		5.6.3	Double-Precision Floating-Point Conversion and Move Instructions	72
		5.6.4	Double-Precision Floating-Point Compare Instructions	
		5.6.5	Double-Precision Floating-Point Classify Instruction	
	5.7	C Ext	tension: Compressed Instructions	

	5.7.1	Compressed 16-bit Instruction Formats	.76
	5.7.2	Stack-Pointed-Based Loads and Stores	.77
	5.7.3	Register-Based Loads and Stores	.78
	5.7.4	Control Transfer Instructions	.79
	5.7.5	Integer Computational Instructions	.80
5.8	Zba E	xtension: Address Calculation Instructions	.83
	5.8.1	Address Calculation Instructions	.83
	5.8.2	Add/Shift with Prefix Zero-Extend Instructions	.84
5.9	Zbb E	xtension: Basic Bit Manipulation Instructions	.84
	5.9.1	Count Leading/Trailing Zeroes Instructions	.84
	5.9.2	Count Population Instructions	.85
	5.9.3	Logic-With-Negate Instructions	.85
	5.9.4	Comparison Instructions	.86
	5.9.5	Sign-Extend and Zero-Extend Instructions	.86
	5.9.6	Bitwise Rotation Instructions	.87
	5.9.7	OR Combine Instruction	.88
	5.9.8	Byte-Reverse Instruction	.88
5.10) Zicsı	Extension: Control and Status Register Instructions	.88
	5.10.1	Control and Status Registers	. 90
	5.10.2	Defined CSRs	. 90
	5.10.3	CSR Access Ordering	. 93
	5.10.4	SiFive RISC-V Implementation Version Registers	.93
	5.10.5	Custom CSRs	. 96
5.11	Base	e Counters and Timers	. 96
	5.11.1	Timer Register	. 97
	5.11.2	Timer API	. 97
5.12	2 Privi	leged Instructions	. 98
	5.12.1	Machine-Mode Privileged Instructions	.98
5.13	B ABI	Register File Usage and Calling Conventions	.99
	5.13.1	RISC-V Assembly	101
	5.13.2	Assembler to Machine Code	101
	5.13.3	Calling a Function (Calling Convention)	103
5.14	l Mem	nory Ordering - FENCE Instructions	105

	5.15	Воо	ot Flow	106
	5.16	Link	er File	107
		5.16.1	Linker File Symbols	108
	5.17	RIS	C-V Compiler Flags	110
		5.17.1	arch, abi, and mtune	110
	5.18	Con	npilation Process	113
	5.19	Larç	ge Code Model Workarounds	113
		5.19.1	RISC-V Code Model Summary	114
		5.19.2	Enabling the Compact Code Model	114
	5.20	Pipe	eline Hazards	116
		5.20.1	Read-After-Write Hazards	116
		5.20.2	Write-After-Write Hazards	116
	5.21	Rea	ading CSRs	116
6	Cu	stom	Instructions and CSRs	119
•	6.1		e Custom Instructions	
	_	6.1.1	CFLUSH.D.L1	
		6.1.2	CDISCARD.D.L1	
		6.1.3	CEASE	
		6.1.4	PAUSE	
	6.2		e Custom CSRs	
	_	6.2.1	Branch Prediction Mode CSR	
		6.2.2	SiFive Feature Disable CSR	
		6.2.3	Power Dial CSR	
	6.3	Othe	r Custom Instructions and CSRs	
7	Int	errup	ots and Exceptions	123
	7.1	Interr	rupt Concepts	123
	7.2	Exce	ption Concepts	123
	7.3	Trap	Concepts	125
	7.4	Interr	rupt Block Diagram	126
	7.5	Local	I Interrupts	127
	7.6	Interr	rupt Operation	128

		7.6.1	Interrupt Entry and Exit	128
	7.7	Interru	upt Control and Status Registers	128
		7.7.1	Machine Status Register (mstatus)	129
		7.7.2	Machine Trap Vector (mtvec)	129
		7.7.3	Machine Interrupt Enable (mie)	130
		7.7.4	Machine Interrupt Pending (mip)	131
		7.7.5	Machine Cause (mcause)	131
		7.7.6	Minimum Interrupt Configuration	132
	7.8	Interru	upt Priorities	133
	7.9	Interru	upt Latency	133
	7.10	Non-	-Maskable Interrupt	133
		7.10.1	Handler Addresses	133
		7.10.2	RNMI CSRs	134
		7.10.3	MNRET Instruction	135
		7.10.4	RNMI Operation	135
8	Co	ro Lo	eal Interruptor (CLINT)	100
0			cal Interruptor (CLINT)	
	8.1		Γ Priorities and Preemption	
	8.2		Flaterwork Courses	
	8.3		Γ Interrupt Sources	
	8.4		Γ Interrupt Attribute	
	8.5		Γ Memory Map	
	8.6	· ·	ter Descriptions	
			MSIP Register	
		8.6.2	Timer Registers	141
9	Pla	atform	1-Level Interrupt Controller (PLIC)	142
	9.1		ory Map	
	9.2		upt Sources	
	9.3		upt Priorities	
	9.4		upt Pending Bits	
	9.5		upt Enables	
	9.6		Clock Gate Disable	148

	9.7	Priority	Thresholds	149
	9.8	_	pt Claim Process	
	9.9		pt Completion	
	9.10		ple PLIC Interrupt Handler	
10	Til	eLink	Error Device	152
11	Le	vel 2	Prefetcher	153
	11.1		ation	
	11.2	-	ng Streams	
	11.3		Boundaries	
	11.4		pry Map	
	11.5		ol Registers	
	11.6		efetcher Initialization	
12	Le	vel 2	Cache Controller	157
	12.1	Level	2 Cache Controller Overview	157
	12.2	Funct	ional Description	157
	1	2.2.1	Way Enable and the L2 Loosely-Integrated Memory (L2 LIM)	158
	1	2.2.2	Way Masking and Locking	159
	1	2.2.3	L2 Zero Device	160
	1	2.2.4	L2 Features Access Summary	162
	1	2.2.5	L2 Performance Monitor	162
	1	2.2.6	Coherence	166
	12.3	Memo	ory Map	167
	12.4	Regis	ster Descriptions	169
	1	2.4.1	L2 Cache Configuration Register (Config)	169
	1	2.4.2	Way Enable Register (WayEnable)	170
	1	2.4.3	Cache Flush Registers (Flush*)	170
	1	2.4.4	Way Mask Registers (WayMask*)	170
	12.5	Proce	edure to Flush the L2 Cache	
	1	2.5.1	Flushing a Single Index+Way	172
	1	252	Flushing the Entire L2 Cache	173

13	Po	ower	Management	174
	13.1	Powe	er Modes	174
	13.2	Run	Mode	174
	2	13.2.1	Power Control	174
	13.3	WFI	Clock Gate Mode	175
	:	13.3.1	WFI Wake Up	175
	13.4	CEA	SE Instruction for Power Down	176
	13.5	Subs	system LowPower Controller (SLPC)	176
	13.6	Com	posable Cache Clock Gating	177
	13.7	Hard	ware Reset	178
	13.8	Early	Boot Flow	179
	13.9	Inter	rupt State During Early Boot	179
	13.10) Oth	er Boot Time Considerations	180
	13.11	Pov	ver-Down Flow	181
	_			
14	De	_		
	14.1		ug Module	
	14.2		ug and Trigger Registers	
		14.2.1	Debug Control and Status Register (dcsr)	
	-	14.2.2	Debug PC (dpc)	
	-	14.2.3	Debug Scratch (dscratch)	
	-	14.2.4	Trigger Select Register (tselect)	
		14.2.5	Trigger Data Registers (tdata1-3)	
	14.3	Brea	kpoints	190
	-	14.3.1	Breakpoint Match Control Register (mcontrol6)	190
	-	14.3.2	Breakpoint Match Address Register (maddress)	
	-	14.3.3	Breakpoint Execution	193
	-	14.3.4	Sharing Breakpoints Between Debug and Machine Mode	194
	14.4	Debu	ug Memory Map	194
	-	14.4.1	Debug RAM and Program Buffer (0x300-0x3FF)	194
	-	14.4.2	Debug ROM (0x800–0xFFF)	194
	-	14.4.3	Debug Flags (0x100-0x110, 0x400-0x7FF)	194
	-	14.4.4	Safe Address	195

	14.5	5 Debu	g Module Interface	195
		14.5.1	Debug Module Status Register (dmstatus)	196
		14.5.2	Debug Module Control Register (dmcontrol)	198
		14.5.3	Hart Info Register (hartinfo)	199
		14.5.4	Hart Array Window Register (hawindow)	200
		14.5.5	Abstract Control and Status Register (abstractcs)	201
		14.5.6	Abstract Command Register (command)	202
		14.5.7	Abstract Command Autoexec Register (abstractauto)	202
		14.5.8	Debug Module Control and Status 2 Register (dmcs2)	202
		14.5.9	Abstract Commands	203
		14.5.10	Multi-core Synchronization	205
		14.5.11	System Bus Access	205
	14.6	5 Debu	ıg Module Operational Sequences	206
		14.6.1	Entering Debug Mode	206
		14.6.2	Exiting Debug Mode	206
Α	Si	Five C	Core Complex Configuration Options	207
	A.1		ries	
	7—	3 . 3 0		
В	Si	Five R	RISC-V Implementation Registers	211
	B.1	Machi	ne Architecture ID Register (marchid)	211
	B.2	Machi	ne Implementation ID Register (mimpid)	212
С	Si	Five C	Custom CSRs	213
D	FI	oating	-Point Unit Instruction Timing	214
	D.1	S7 Flo	pating-Point Instruction Timing	214
E	Re	evisior	າ History	217
F	Kr	nowled	dge Base Articles	218
Da	for	ancas		210

Tables

Table 1	S76-MC Core Complex Feature Set	19
Table 2	RISC-V Specification Compliance	23
Table 3	Abbreviations and Terms	25
Table 4	S7 Feature Set	26
Table 5	Executable Memory Regions for the S76-MC Core Complex	27
Table 6	S7 Instruction Latency	31
Table 7	pmpXcfg Bitfield Description	36
Table 8	pmpaddrX Encoding Examples for A=NAPOT	37
Table 9	mhpmeventX Register Bit Layout for Overflow and Filtering	42
Table 10	mhpmevent Register	44
Table 11	Physical Memory Attributes for External Regions	48
Table 12	Physical Memory Attributes for Internal Regions	48
Table 13 X –Execute	S76-MC Core Complex Memory Map. Physical Memory Attributes: R –Reace, I –Instruction Cacheable, D –Data Cacheable, A –Atomics	
Table 14	Base Instruction Formats	52
Table 15	R-Type Integer Instructions	54
Table 16	R-Type Integer Instruction Description	54
Table 17	I-Type Integer Instructions	55
Table 18	I-Type Integer Instruction Description	56
Table 19	I-Type Load Instructions	57
Table 20	I-Type Load Instruction Description	57
Table 21	S-Type Store Instructions	58
Table 22	S-Type Store Instruction Description	58
Table 23	J-Type Instruction Description	59
Table 24	B-Type Instructions	59
Table 25	B-Type Instruction Description	59
Table 26	RISC-V Base Instruction to Assembly Pseudoinstruction Example	60
Table 27	Multiplication Operation Description	61
Table 28	Division Operation Description	62

Table 29	Atomic Load-Reserve and Store-Conditional Instruction Description	63
Table 30	Atomic Memory Operation Description	64
Table 31	Accrued Exception Flags	64
Table 32	Floating-Point Rounding Modes	65
Table 33	Single-Precision FP Load and Store Instructions Description	65
Table 34	Single-Precision FP Computational Instructions Description	66
Table 35	Single-Precision FP Conversion Instructions Description	67
Table 36	Single-Precision FP to FP Sign-Injection Instructions Description	68
Table 37	RISC-V Base Instruction to Assembly Pseudoinstruction Example	68
Table 38	Single-Precision FP Move Instructions Description	68
Table 39	Single-Precision FP Compare Instructions Description	69
Table 40	Single-Precision FP Classify Instruction Description	69
Table 41	Floating-Point Number Classes	70
Table 42	Double-Precision FP Load and Store Instructions Description	70
Table 43	Double-Precision FP Computational Instructions Description	71
Table 44	Double-Precision FP Conversion Instructions Description	73
Table 45	Double-Precision FP to FP Sign-Injection Instructions Description	74
Table 46	RISC-V Base Instruction to Assembly Pseudoinstruction Example	74
Table 47	Double-Precision FP Move Instructions Description	75
Table 48	Double-Precision FP Compare Instructions Description	75
Table 49	Double-Precision FP Classify Instruction Description	76
Table 50	Stack-Pointed-Based Load Instruction Description	77
Table 51	Stack-Pointed-Based Store Instruction Description	78
Table 52	Register-Based Load Instruction Description	78
Table 53	Register-Based Store Instruction Description	79
Table 54	Unconditional Jump Instruction Description	79
Table 55	Unconditional Control Transfer Instruction Description	79
Table 56	Conditional Control Transfer Instruction Description	80
Table 57	Integer Constant-Generation Instruction Description	80
Table 58	Integer Register-Immediate Operation Description	81
Table 59	Integer Register-Immediate Operation Description (cont.)	81
Table 60	Integer Register-Immediate Operation Description (cont.)	81
Table 61	Integer Register-Immediate Operation Description (cont.)	81

Table 62	Integer Register-Immediate Operation Description (cont.)	82
Table 63	Integer Register-Register Operation Description	82
Table 64	Integer Register-Register Operation Description (cont.)	82
Table 65	Address Calculation Instructions Description	83
Table 66	Add/Shift with Prefix Zero-Extend Instructions Description	84
Table 67	Count Leading/Trailing Zeroes Instructions Description	85
Table 68	Count Population Instructions Description	85
Table 69	Logic-With-Negate Instructions Description	86
Table 70	Comparison Instructions Description	86
Table 71	Sign- and Zero-Extend Instructions	87
Table 72	Bitwise Rotation Instructions Description	88
Table 73	OR Combine Instruction Description	88
Table 74	Byte-Reverse Instruction Description	88
Table 75	Control and Status Register Instruction Description	89
Table 76	CSR Reads and Writes	90
Table 77	User Mode CSRs	91
Table 78	Machine Mode CSRs	92
Table 79	Debug Mode Registers	93
Table 80	Core Generator Encoding of marchid	94
Table 81	Generator Release Encoding of mimpid	95
Table 82	Timer and Counter Pseudoinstruction Description	96
Table 83	Timer and Counter CSRs	97
Table 84	RISC-V Registers	100
Table 85	RISC-V Assembly and C Examples	101
Table 86	RISC-V Code Model Table	114
Table 87	Branch Prediction Mode CSR	120
Table 88	SiFive Feature Disable CSR	121
Table 89	SiFive Feature Disable CSR Usage	122
Table 90	Exception Priority	124
Table 91	Summary of Exception and Interrupt CSRs	125
Table 92	Machine Status Register (partial)	129
Table 93	Machine Trap Vector Register	129
Table 94	Encoding of mtvec.MODE	130

Table 95	Machine Interrupt Enable Register	131
Table 96	Machine Interrupt Pending Register	131
Table 97	Machine Cause Register	132
Table 98	mcause Exception Codes	132
Table 99	RNMI CSRs	134
Table 101	mnstatus CSR Fields	134
Table 102	S76-MC Core Complex Interrupt IDs	139
Table 103	CLINT Memory Map	140
Table 104	PLIC Memory Map	144
Table 105	Mapping of global_interrupts Signal Bits to PLIC Interrupt ID	146
Table 106	PLIC Interrupt Priority Register	146
Table 107	PLIC Interrupt Pending Register 1	147
Table 108	PLIC Interrupt Pending Register 4	147
Table 109	PLIC Interrupt Enable Register 1 for Hart 0 M-Mode	148
Table 110	PLIC Interrupt Enable Register 4 for Hart 0 M-Mode	148
Table 111	PLIC Clock Gate Disable Register	148
Table 112	PLIC Interrupt Priority Threshold Register for Hart 0 M-Mode	149
Table 113	PLIC Claim/Complete Register for Hart 0 M-Mode	150
Table 114	L2 Prefetcher Instances	153
Table 115	L2 Prefetcher Memory Map	155
Table 116	Basic Control Register	155
Table 117	Additional Control Register	156
Table 118	L2 Features Access Summary	162
Table 119	L2 Performance Monitor Event Selectors	162
Table 120	L2 Performance Monitor Counter Client Filter	163
Table 121	L2 Performance Monitor Counters	163
Table 122	L2PM pmEventSelect Register	164
Table 123	L2 Cache Controller Memory Map	168
Table 124	L2 Cache Configuration Register	169
Table 125	Way Enable Register	170
Table 126	Way Mask 0 Register	171
Table 127	Master IDs in the L2 Cache Controller	172
Table 128	Power Dial CSR	175

Table 129	CorePower State Memory Map	176
Table 130	CorePower State Register	176
Table 131	DisableClockGate Memory Map	177
Table 132	DisableClockGate Register	178
Table 133	Debug Module Memory Map Seen from the Debug Module Interface	184
Table 134	Debug Module Memory Map from the Perspective of the Core	186
Table 135	Debug and Trigger Registers	187
Table 136	Debug Control and Status Register	188
Table 137	Trigger Select Register	189
Table 138	Trigger Data Register 1	189
Table 139	Trigger Data Registers 2 and 3	190
Table 140	Trigger CSRs When Used as Breakpoints	190
Table 141	Breakpoint Match Control Register	191
Table 142	NAPOT Size Encoding	192
Table 143	Debug Module Interface Signals	196
Table 144	Debug Module Status Register	197
Table 145	Debug Module Control Register	199
Table 146	Hart Info Register	200
Table 147	Abstract Control and Status Register	201
Table 148	Abstract Command Register	202
Table 149	Abstract Command Autoexec Register	202
Table 150	Debug Module Control and Status 2 Register	203
Table 151	Debug Abstract Commands	204
Table 152	Abstract Command Example for 32-bit Block Write	205
Table 153	System Bus vs. Program Buffer Comparison	206
Table 154	Core Generator Encoding of marchid	211
Table 155	Generator Release Encoding of mimpid	212
Table 156	SiFive Custom CSRs	213
Table 157	S7 Single-Precision FPU Instruction Latency and Repeat Rates	215
Table 158	S7 Double-Precision FPU Instruction Latency and Repeat Rates	216
Table 159	S76-MC Core Complex Manual Revision History	217

Figures

Figure 1	S7 Series Block Diagram	. 21
Figure 2	S7 Execution Pipeline	. 30
Figure 3	RV64 pmpcfg0 Register	. 35
Figure 4	RV64 pmpcfg2 Register	. 35
Figure 5	RV64 pmpxcfg bitfield	. 35
Figure 6	RV64 pmpaddrX Register	.37
Figure 7	PMP Example Block Diagram	.38
Figure 8	Event Selector Fields	. 41
Figure 9	R-Type	. 52
Figure 10	I-Type	. 53
Figure 11	S-Type	. 53
Figure 12	В-Туре	. 53
Figure 13	U-Type	. 53
Figure 14	J-Type	. 53
Figure 15	ADD Instruction Example	.54
Figure 16	ADDI Instruction Example	. 56
Figure 17	LW Instruction Example	.57
Figure 18	Store Instructions	.57
Figure 19	SW Instruction Example	.58
Figure 20	JAL Instruction	. 58
Figure 21	JALR Instruction	. 58
Figure 22	Branch Instructions	. 59
Figure 23	Upper-Immediate Instructions	. 60
Figure 24	FENCE Instructions	. 60
Figure 25	NOP Instructions	. 61
Figure 26	Multiplication Operations	. 61
Figure 27	Division Operations	. 62
Figure 28	Atomic Operations	. 62
Figure 29	Atomic Memory Operations	. 63

Figure 30	Floating-Point Control and Status Register	64	
Figure 31	Single-Precision FP Load Instruction		
Figure 32	Single-Precision FP Store Instruction	65	
Figure 33	Single-Precision FP Computational Instructions	66	
Figure 34	Single-Precision FP Fused Computational Instructions	66	
Figure 35	Single-Precision FP to Integer and Integer to FP Conversion Instructions	66	
Figure 36	Single-Precision FP to FP Sign-Injection Instructions	67	
Figure 37	Single-Precision FP Move Instructions	68	
Figure 38	Single-Precision FP Compare Instructions	69	
Figure 39	Single-Precision FP Classify Instruction	69	
Figure 40	Double-Precision FP Load Instruction	70	
Figure 41	Double-Precision FP Store Instruction	70	
Figure 42	Double-Precision FP Computational Instructions	71	
Figure 43	Double-Precision FP Fused Computational Instructions	71	
Figure 44	Double-Precision FP to Integer and Integer to FP Conversion Instructions	72	
Figure 45 Conversion	Double-Precision to Single-Precision and Single-Precision to Double-Precision FP Instructions	72	
Figure 46	Double-Precision FP to FP Sign-Injection Instructions	74	
Figure 47	Double-Precision FP Move Instructions	74	
Figure 48	Double-Precision FP Compare Instructions	75	
Figure 49	Double-Precision FP Classify Instruction	76	
Figure 50	CR Format - Register	76	
Figure 51	CI Format - Immediate	76	
Figure 52	CSS Format - Stack-relative Store	76	
Figure 53	CIW Format - Wide Immediate	76	
Figure 54	CL Format - Load	77	
Figure 55	CS Format - Store	77	
Figure 56	CA Format - Arithmetic	77	
Figure 57	CJ Format - Jump	77	
Figure 58	Stack-Pointed-Based Loads	77	
Figure 59	Stack-Pointed-Based Stores	77	
Figure 60	Register-Based Loads	78	

Figure 62	Unconditional Jump Instructions	79
Figure 63	Unconditional Control Transfer Instructions	79
Figure 64	Conditional Control Transfer Instructions	80
Figure 65	Integer Constant-Generation Instructions	80
Figure 66	Integer Register-Immediate Operations	80
Figure 67	Integer Register-Immediate Operations (cont.)	81
Figure 68	Integer Register-Immediate Operations (cont.)	81
Figure 69	Integer Register-Immediate Operations (cont.)	81
Figure 70	Integer Register-Immediate Operations (cont.)	82
Figure 71	Integer Register-Register Operations	82
Figure 72	Integer Register-Register Operations (cont.)	82
Figure 73	Defined Illegal Instruction	83
Figure 74	Address Calculation Instructions	83
Figure 75	Address Calculation Instructions (cont.)	83
Figure 76	Add with Prefix Zero-Extend Instruction	84
Figure 77	Shift with Prefix Zero-Extend Instruction	84
Figure 78	Count Leading/Trailing Zeroes Instructions	84
Figure 79	Count Leading/Trailing Zeroes Instructions (cont.)	84
Figure 80	Count Population Instruction	85
Figure 81	Count Population Instruction (cont.)	85
Figure 82	Logic-With-Negate Instructions	85
Figure 83	Comparison Instructions	86
Figure 84	Sign-Extend Instructions	86
Figure 85	Zero-Extend Instruction	86
Figure 86	Bitwise Rotation Instructions	87
Figure 87	Bitwise Rotation Instructions (cont.)	87
Figure 88	Bitwise Rotation Instructions (cont.)	87
Figure 89	Bitwise Rotation Instructions (cont.)	87
Figure 90	Zicsr Instructions	89
Figure 91	Timer and Counter Pseudoinstructions	96
Figure 92	ECALL and EBREAK Instructions	98
Figure 93	Wait for Interrupt Instruction	99
Figure 94	RISC-V Assembly Example	101

Figure 95	RISC-V Assembly to Machine Code	102
Figure 96	One RISC-V Instruction	103
Figure 97	Stack Memory during Function Calls	105
Figure 98	S76-MC Core Complex Interrupt Architecture Block Diagram	127
Figure 99	CLINT Block Diagram	136
Figure 100	CLINT Interrupts and Vector Table	137
Figure 101	CLINT Vector Table Example	138
Figure 102	CLINT Interrupt Attribute Example	139
Figure 103	PLIC Multi-Core Block Diagram	143
Figure 104	Organization of the SiFive L2 Cache Controller	158
Figure 105	Mapping of L2 Cache Ways to L2 LIM Addresses	159
Figure 106	Difference between L2 LIM and L2 Zero Device	161
Figure 107	Event Selector Fields	162

Chapter 1

Introduction

SiFive's S76-MC Core Complex is a high performance implementation of the RISC-V *RV64GC_Zba_Zbb_Sscofpmf* architecture. The SiFive S76-MC Core Complex is guaranteed to be compatible with all applicable RISC-V standards, and this document should be read together with the official RISC-V user-level, privileged, and external debug architecture specifications.



A summary of features in the S76-MC Core Complex can be found in Table 1.

S76-MC Core Complex Feature Set			
Feature	Description		
Number of Harts	4 Harts.		
S7 Core	4 × S7 RISC-V cores.		
PLIC Interrupts	127 Interrupt signals, which can be connected to		
	off-core-complex devices.		
PLIC Priority Levels	The PLIC supports 7 priority levels.		
Level 2 Cache	512 KiB 16-way L2 Cache.		
Hardware Breakpoints	4 hardware breakpoints.		
Physical Memory Protection	PMP with 8 regions and a minimum granularity of 64 bytes.		
Unit			

Table 1: S76-MC Core Complex Feature Set

The S76-MC Core Complex also has a number of on-core-complex configurability options, allowing one to tune the design to a specific application. The configurable options are described in Appendix A.

1.1 About this Document

This document describes the functionality of the S76-MC Core Complex 21G3.02.00. To learn more about the production deliverables of the S76-MC Core Complex, consult the S76-MC Core Complex User Guide.

1.2 About this Release

This is a general release of the S76-MC Core Complex 21G3.02.00, with a supported life cycle of two years from the release date. Contact support@sifive.com if you have any questions.

1.3 S76-MC Core Complex Overview

The S76-MC Core Complex includes $4 \times S7$ 64-bit RISC-V cores, along with the necessary functional units required to support the cores. These units include a Core-Local Interruptor (CLINT) to support local interrupts, a Platform-Level Interrupt Controller (PLIC) to support platform interrupts, physical memory protection, a Debug unit to support a JTAG-based debugger host connection, and a local crossbar that integrates the various components together.

The S76-MC Core Complex memory system consists of a Data Cache, Data Local Store (DLS), Instruction Cache, and Instruction Tightly-Integrated Memory (ITIM), with coherent L1 caches, shared L2 Cache, and a directory based coherence manager. The S76-MC Core Complex also includes a Front Port, which allows external masters to be coherent with the L1 memory system and access to the TIMs, thereby removing the need to maintain coherence in software for any external agents.

An overview of the SiFive S7 Series is shown in Figure 1. Refer to the docs/core_complex_configuration.txt file for a comprehensive summary of the S76-MC Core Complex configuration.

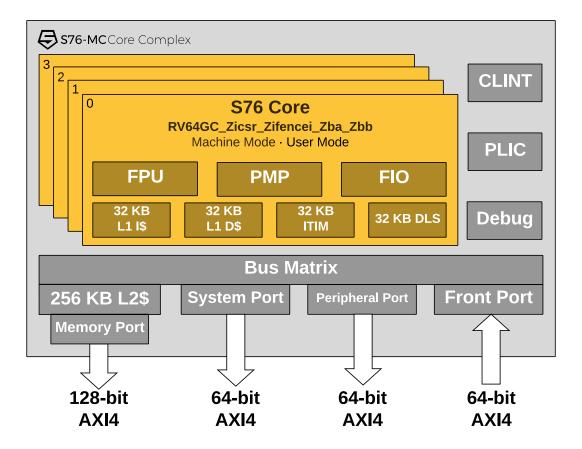


Figure 1: S7 Series Block Diagram

The S76-MC Core Complex memory map is detailed in Section 4.2, and the interfaces are described in full in the S76-MC Core Complex User Guide.

1.4 S7 RISC-V Cores

The S76-MC Core Complex includes four 64-bit S7 RISC-V cores, which each have a dualissue, in-order execution pipeline, with a peak execution rate of two instructions per clock cycle. The SiFive S7 core is guaranteed to be compatible with all applicable RISC-V standards.

Each S7 core is configured to support the RV64I base ISA, as well as the Multiply (M), Atomic (A), Single-Precision Floating Point (F), Double-Precision Floating Point (D), Compressed (C), CSR Instructions (Zicsr), Instruction-Fetch Fence (Zifencei), Address Calculation (Zba), Basic Bit Manipulation (Zbb), and Count Overflow and Mode-Based Filtering (Sscofpmf) RISC-V extensions. This is captured by the RISC-V extension string: RV64GC_Zba_Zbb_Sscofpmf. The base ISA and instruction extensions are described in Chapter 5.

The S7 also supports machine and user privilege modes, in conjunction with Physical Memory Protection (PMP), thereby allowing System-on-Chip (SoC) implementations to make the right area, power, and feature trade-offs.

The S7 core is designed to be feature rich, providing a very flexible memory system that includes L1 caches, Tightly-Integrated Memory (TIM), standards-based configurable bus interfaces, and memory maps that provide a lot of flexibility for SoC integration.

The microarchitecture also incorporates a branch prediction unit that is composed of a 4-entry Branch Target Buffer (BTB), a 1.3 KiB-entry Branch History Table (BHT), a 3-entry Return Address Stack (RAS), 2-entry Indirect Jump Target Predictor (IJTP), and a 16-entry Return Instruction Predictor.

The S7 includes an IEEE 754-2008 compliant Floating-Point Unit.

The S7 cores are described in more detail in Chapter 3.

1.5 Memory System

The S76-MC Core Complex memory system has a Level 1 memory system optimized for high performance. The instruction subsystem consists of a 32 KiB, 2-way instruction cache. The S76-MC Core Complex also includes a 32 KiB Instruction Tightly Integrated Memory (ITIM). The data subsystem is comprised of a high performance 32 KiB, 4-way L1 data cache. The memory system is described in more detail in Chapter 3.

The S76-MC Core Complex also supports a shared, 512 KiB, 16-way L2 cache with 2 banks. The L2 Cache Controller is described in Chapter 12.

1.6 Interrupts

The S76-MC Core Complex provides the standard RISC-V M-mode timer and software interrupts via the Core-Local Interruptor (CLINT).

The S76-MC Core Complex also includes a RISC-V standard Platform-Level Interrupt Controller (PLIC), which supports 127 global interrupts with 7 priority levels.

Interrupts are described in Chapter 7. The CLINT is described in Chapter 8. The PLIC is described in Chapter 9.

1.7 Debug Support

The S76-MC Core Complex provides external debugger support over an industry-standard JTAG port, including 4 hardware-programmable breakpoints per hart.

Debug support is described in detail in Chapter 14, and the debug interface is described in the S76-MC Core Complex User Guide.

1.8 Compliance

The S76-MC Core Complex is compliant to the following versions of the various RISC-V specifications:

ISA	Version	Status
RV64I Base Integer Instruction Set	2.1	Ratified
Extensions	Version	Status
M Standard Extension for Integer Multiplication and Division	2.0	Ratified
A Standard Extension for Atomic Instruction	2.1	Ratified
F Standard Extension for Single-Precision Floating-Point	2.2	Ratified
D Standard Extension for Double-Precision Floating-Point	2.2	Ratified
C Standard Extension for Compressed Instruction	2.0	Ratified
Zicsr Standard Extension for Control and Status Register (CSR)	2.0	Ratified
Instructions		
Zifencei Standard Extension for Instruction-Fetch Fence	2.0	Ratified
Zba Standard Extension for Address Calculation	1.0	Ratified
Zbb Standard Extension for Basic Bit Manipulation	1.0	Ratified
Sscofpmf Standard Extension for Count Overflow and Mode-Based	0.1	Ratified
Filtering		
Privilege Mode	Version	Status
Machine-Level ISA	1.11	Ratified
User-Level ISA	1.11	Ratified
Devices	Version	Status
The RISC-V Debug Specification	1.0	Frozen
RISC-V Platform-Level Interrupt Controller (PLIC) Specification	_	_

 Table 2:
 RISC-V Specification Compliance

Chapter 2

List of Abbreviations and Terms

Term	Definition
BHT	Branch History Table
ВТВ	Branch Target Buffer
CLIC	Core-Local Interrupt Controller. Configures priorities and levels for core-local
	interrupts.
CLINT	Core-Local Interruptor. Generates per hart software and timer interrupts.
DTIM	Data Tightly-Integrated Memory
Hart	HARdware Thread
IJTP	Indirect-Jump Target Predictor
ITIM	Instruction Tightly-Integrated Memory
JTAG	Joint Test Action Group
LIM	Loosely-Integrated Memory. Used to describe memory space delivered in a SiFive
	Core Complex that is not tightly integrated to a CPU core.
PLIC	Platform-Level Interrupt Controller. The global interrupt controller in a RISC-V
	system.
PMC	Power Management Controller
PMP	Physical Memory Protection
RAS	Return-Address Stack
RO	Used to describe a Read-Only register field
RS	Read/Set field. A register field that cannot be cleared by software, only reset will
	clear.
RW	Used to describe a Read/Write register field
RW1C	Used to describe a Read/Write-1-to-Clear register field
TileLink	A free and open interconnect standard originally developed at UC Berkeley
W1C	Used to describe a Write-1-to-Clear register field
WARL	Write-Any, Read-Legal field. A register field that can be written with any value, but
	returns only supported values when read.
WIRI	Writes-Ignored, Reads-Ignore field. A read-only register field reserved for future
	use. Writes to the field are ignored and reads should ignore the value returned.
WLRL	Write-Legal, Read-Legal field. A register field that should only be written with legal
14/0	values and that only returns legal value if last written with a legal value.
WO	Used to describe a Write-Only register field
WPRI	Writes-Preserve, Reads-Ignore field. A register field that might contain unknown
	information. Reads should ignore the value returned, but writes to the whole
	register should preserve the original value.

Table 3: Abbreviations and Terms

Chapter 3

S7 RISC-V Core

This chapter describes the 64-bit S7 RISC-V processor core, instruction fetch and execution unit, L1 and L2 memory systems, Physical Memory Protection unit, Hardware Performance Monitor, and external interfaces.

The S7 feature set is summarized in Table 4.

Feature	Description
ISA	RV64GC_Zba_Zbb_Sscofpmf
SiFive Custom Instruction Extension (SCIE)	Not Present
Privilege Modes	M, U
L1 Instruction Cache	32 KiB 2-way instruction cache
Instruction Tightly-Integrated Memory (ITIM)	32 KiB ITIM
L1 Data Cache	32 KiB 4-way data cache
Data Local Store (DLS)	32 KiB DLS with 1 bank
L2 Cache	512 KiB 16-way L2 cache with 2 banks
Fast I/O	Present
Physical Memory Protection	8 regions with a granularity of 64 bytes

Table 4: S7 Feature Set

3.1 Supported Privilege Modes

The S7 supports the RISC-V user mode, providing two levels of privilege: machine (M) and user (U). U-mode provides a mechanism to isolate application processes from each other and from trusted code running in M-mode.

See *The RISC-V Instruction Set Manual, Volume II: Privileged Architecture, Version 1.11* for more information on the privilege modes.

3.2 Instruction Memory System

This section describes the instruction memory system of the S7 core.

3.2.1 Execution Memory Space

The regions of executable memory consist of all directly addressable memory in the system. The memory includes any volatile or non-volatile memory located off the Core Complex ports, and includes the on-core-complex ITIM, L2 LIM, and L2 Zero Device.

Table 5 shows the executable regions of the S76-MC Core Complex	Table 5 shows the	ne executable re	eaions of the	S76-MC Core	Complex.
---	-------------------	------------------	---------------	-------------	----------

Base	Тор	Description
0x0180_0000	0x0180_7FFF	Hart 0 ITIM
0x0182_0000	0x0182_7FFF	Hart 1 ITIM
0x0184_0000	0x0184_7FFF	Hart 2 ITIM
0x0186_0000	0x0186_7FFF	Hart 3 ITIM
0x0800_0000	0x0807_FFFF	L2 LIM
0x0A00_0000	0x0A07_FFFF	L2 Zero Device
0x2000_0000	0x3FFF_FFFF	Peripheral Port (512 MiB)
0x4000_0000	0x5FFF_FFFF	System Port (512 MiB)
0x7000_0000	0x7000_7FFF	Hart 0 Data Local Store
0x7000_8000	0x7000_FFFF	Hart 1 Data Local Store
0x7001_0000	0x7001_7FFF	Hart 2 Data Local Store
0x7001_8000	0x7001_FFFF	Hart 3 Data Local Store
0x8000_0000	0x9FFF_FFFF	Memory Port (512 MiB)

Table 5: Executable Memory Regions for the S76-MC Core Complex

All executable regions, except the ITIM, are treated as instruction cacheable. There is no method to disable this behavior.

Trying to execute an instruction from a non-executable address results in an instruction access trap.

3.2.2 L1 Instruction Cache

The L1 instruction cache is a 32 KiB 2-way set-associative cache. It has a line size of 64 bytes and is read/write-allocate with a random replacement policy. A cache line fill triggers a burst access outside of the Core Complex, starting with the first address of the cache line. There are no write-backs to memory from the instruction cache and it is not kept coherent with rest of the platform memory system. In multi-core systems, the instruction caches are not kept coherent with each other.

Out of reset, all blocks of the instruction cache are invalidated. The access latency of the cache is one clock cycle. There is no way to disable the instruction cache and cache allocations begin immediately out of reset.

3.2.3 Cache Maintenance

The instruction cache supports the FENCE.I instruction, which invalidates the entire instruction cache, as described in Section 5.14. Writes to instruction memory from the core or another master must be synchronized with the instruction fetch stream by executing FENCE.I.

3.2.4 Coherence with Higher Level Caches

The L1 instruction cache is partially inclusive with the L2 Cache, described in Chapter 12.

When a block of instruction memory is allocated to the L1 cache, it is also allocated to the L2 cache if the access was from the Memory Port. Instruction accesses to all other ports will not allocate to the L2 cache, only the L1 cache.

When a block is evicted from L1, it might still reside in L2, which will reduce access time the next time the block is fetched.

If a hart modifies instruction memory (i.e., self-modifying code), then a FENCE.I instruction is required to synchronize the instruction and data streams. Even though FENCE.I targets the L1 instruction cache, no cache operation is required on the L2 cache to maintain instruction coherency.

3.2.5 Instruction Tightly-Integrated Memory (ITIM)

The S7 includes a 32 KiB ITIM in addition to the L1 instruction cache. ITIM accesses have the same performance as instruction cache hits, but can never suffer a miss. This makes the ITIM useful for storing code that benefits from deterministic execution, such as interrupt handlers.

3.2.6 Instruction Fetch Unit

The S7 instruction fetch unit is responsible for keeping the pipeline fed with instructions from memory. The instruction fetch unit delivers up to 8 bytes of instructions per clock cycle to support superscalar instruction execution. Fetches are always word-aligned and there is a one-cycle penalty for branching to a 32-bit instruction that is not word-aligned.

The S7 implements the standard Compressed (C) extension to the RISC-V architecture, which allows for 16-bit RISC-V instructions. As four 16-bit instructions can be fetched per cycle, the instruction fetch unit can be idle when executing programs comprised mostly of compressed 16-bit instructions. This reduces memory accesses and power consumption.

All branches must be aligned to half-word addresses. Otherwise, the fetch generates an instruction address misaligned trap. Trying to fetch from a non-executable or unimplemented address results in an instruction access trap.

3.2.7 Branch Prediction

The S7 instruction fetch unit contains sophisticated predictive hardware to mitigate the performance impact of control hazards within the instruction stream. The instruction fetch unit is decoupled from the execution unit, so that correctly predicted control-flow events usually do not result in execution stalls.

- A 4-entry branch target buffer (BTB), which predicts the target of taken branches and direct jumps;
- A 1.3 KiB branch history table (BHT), which predicts the direction of conditional branches;
- A 2-entry indirect-jump target predictor (IJTP);
- A 3-entry return-address stack (RAS), which predicts the target of procedure returns.

The BHT is a correlating predictor that supports long branch histories. The BTB has one-cycle latency, so that correctly predicted branches and direct jumps result in no penalty, provided the target is 8-byte aligned.

Direct jumps that miss in the BTB result in a one-cycle fetch bubble. This event might not result in any execution stalls if the fetch queue is sufficiently full.

The BHT, IJTP, and RAS take precedence over the BTB. If these structures' predictions disagree with the BTB's prediction, a one-cycle fetch bubble results. Similar to direct jumps that miss in the BTB, the fetch bubble might not result in an execution stall.

Mispredicted branches usually incur a four-cycle penalty, but sometimes the branch resolves later in the execution pipeline and incurs a six-cycle penalty instead. Mispredicted indirect jumps incur a six-cycle penalty.

Branch prediction is enabled out of reset and cannot be disabled. However, instruction speculation, fetching before a prediction is confirmed, must be enabled in the Feature Disable CSR, described in Chapter 6.

As instruction speculation can occur at any point after it has been enabled, data cacheable regions of memory (i.e., DDR) must be able to respond to instruction fetches immediately after instruction speculation is enabled. If DDR initialization is not completed before instruction speculation is enabled, the memory system must return a decode error (DECERR) for accesses made to DDR. The fetch unit will ignore errors associated with speculative accesses and continue to operate normally.

The Branch Prediction Mode CSR, also described in Chapter 6, provides a means to customize the branch predictor behavior to trade average performance for more predictable execution time.

3.3 Execution Pipeline

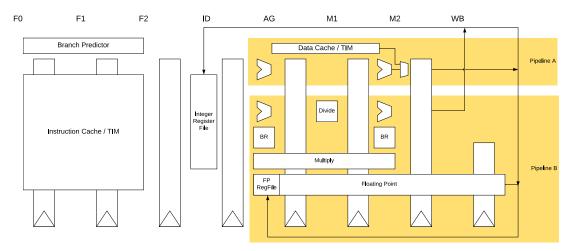


Figure 2: S7 Execution Pipeline

The S7 execution unit is a dual-issue, in-order pipeline. The pipeline comprises eight stages: three stages of instruction fetch (F0-F2), instruction decode (ID), address generation (AG), two stages of data memory access (M1 and M2), and register write-back (WB). The pipeline has a peak execution rate of two instructions per clock cycle, and is fully bypassed so that most instructions have a one-cycle result latency:

- Integer arithmetic and branch instructions can execute in either the AG or M2 pipeline stage. If such an instruction's operands are available when the instruction enters the AG stage, then it executes in AG; otherwise, it executes in M2.
- Loads produce their result in the M2 stage. There is no load-use delay for most integer
 instructions. However, effective addresses for memory accesses are always computed in
 the AG stage. Hence, loads, stores, and indirect jumps require their address operands to
 be ready when the instruction enters AG. If an address-generation operation depends upon
 a load from memory, then the load-use delay is two cycles.
- Integer multiplication instructions consume their operands in the AG stage and produce their results in the M2 stage. The integer multiplier is fully pipelined.
- Integer division instructions consume their operands in the AG stage. These instructions have between a six-cycle and 68-cycle result latency, depending on the operand values.
- CSR accesses execute in the M2 stage. CSR read data can be bypassed to most integer instructions with no delay. Most CSR writes flush the pipeline, which is a seven-cycle penalty.

Instruction	Latency
LW	Three-cycle latency, assuming cache hit ¹
LH, LHU, LB, LBU	Three-cycle latency, assuming cache hit ¹
CSR Reads	One-cycle latency ²
MUL, MULH, MULHU, MULHSU	Three-cycle latency
DIV, DIVU, REM, REMU	Between six-cycle to 68-cycle latency, depending on operand values ³

¹Effective address not ready in AG stage. Load-to-use latency = load-to-use delay + 1

Table 6: S7 Instruction Latency

The pipeline has some register dependencies, where it interlocks on read-after-write and write-after-write hazards, so instructions may be scheduled to avoid stalls. Otherwise, the processor can have multiple outstanding memory-mapped I/O accesses, even to the same address. The pipeline implements a flexible dual-instruction-issue scheme. Provided there are no data hazards between a pair of instructions, the two instructions may issue in the same cycle, provided the following constraints are met:

- At most one instruction accesses data memory.
- At most one instruction is a branch or jump.
- At most one instruction is a floating-point arithmetic operation.
- At most one instruction is an integer multiplication or division operation.
- · Neither instruction explicitly accesses a CSR.

See Appendix D for a complete list of floating-point unit instruction timings.

3.4 Data Memory System

The data memory system consists of on-core-complex data and the ports in the S76-MC Core Complex memory map, shown in Section 4.2. The on-core-complex data memory consists of a 32 KiB L1 data cache and 512 KiB L2 cache. A design cannot have both data cache and DTIM.

Data accesses are classified as cacheable, for those targeting the Memory Port; or non-cacheable, for those targeting any other port in the Core Complex. Non-cacheable data accesses are collectively called memory-mapped I/O accesses, or MMIOs.

² cycle latency = cycle delay + 1

³The latency of DIV, DIVU, REM, and REMU instructions can be determined by calculating: Latency = 2 cycles + $log_2(dividend) - log_2(divisor) + 1$ cycle if the input is negative + 1 cycle if the output is negative

The S7 pipeline allows for multiple outstanding memory accesses, but only allows one outstanding cache line fill. The memory system includes the Fast I/O feature, described in Section 3.5, which improves the throughput of MMIOs. The number of outstanding MMIOs are implementation dependent. Misaligned accesses are not allowed to any memory region and result in a trap to allow for software emulation.

3.4.1 L1 Data Cache

The L1 data cache is a 32 KiB 4-way set-associative cache. It has a line size of 64 bytes and is read/write-allocate with a PLRU replacement policy. The cache operates in write-back mode; this means that if a cache line is dirty, it is written back to memory when evicted. Out of reset, all lines of the cache are invalidated.

The Memory Port address range is the only cacheable region of memory. A cache line fill triggers a burst access starting with the first address of the cache line. On a cache hit, the access latency is two clock cycles for words and double-words, and three clock cycles for smaller quantities. Stores are pipelined and commit on cycles where the data memory system is otherwise idle. Pending stores are stored in a buffer, which drains whenever there is an idle cycle or another store. Loads to addresses currently in the store pipeline result in a five-cycle penalty.

The data cache supports only one outstanding line fill. Once a cacheable access is made that misses, another cannot be issued until the line fill completes. However, other MMIOs can be issued before or after the line fill as long as there are no address or register hazards.

The data cache cannot be disabled and the properties of the Memory Port cannot be modified to prevent cacheable accesses.

3.4.2 Cache Maintenance Operations

The data cache supports CFLUSH.D.L1 and CDISCARD.D.L1. The instruction CFLUSH.D.L1 cleans and invalidates the specified line or all cache lines. The instruction CDISCARD.D.L1 invalidates the specified line or all cache lines.

These custom instructions are further described in Chapter 6.

3.4.3 L1 Data Cache Coherency

All of the L1 data caches in the Core Complex are kept coherent with an integrated coherency manager. This is an automatic feature and cannot be disabled. The CFLUSH.D.L1 and CDISCARD.D.L1 instructions only affect the core that executed the instruction. They are not broadcast to all cores in the Complex.

3.4.4 Coherence with Higher Level Caches

The L1 data cache is inclusive with the L2 Cache, described in Chapter 12.

When a block of data is allocated to the L1 cache, it is also allocated to the L2 cache. When a block is evicted from the L1, the corresponding line in L2 is then updated and marked dirty.

The custom instructions CFLUSH.D.L1 and CDISCARD.D.L1 only target the L1 data cache, and do not impact the L2 cache. Flush capability of the L2 Cache Controller is described in Section 12.4.3.

3.4.5 Data Local Store (DLS)

The S7 includes an additional fast, local memory called the Data Local Store (DLS). The DLS is 32 KiB in size, has 1 bank, and is directly addressable, as shown in Section 4.2. Accesses to the DLS have a fixed, five-cycle load-to-use latency, which makes it ideal for holding data that requires deterministic access time.

Each hart has its own DLS region, but it is not private to each hart.

3.5 Fast I/O

The Fast I/O feature improves the performance of the memory-mapped I/O (MMIO) subsystem. This is achieved by predicting whether an access is I/O or not by examining the base address of a read or write.

Fast I/O enables a sustained rate of one MMIO operation per clock cycle. By contrast, when this feature is excluded, MMIO loads can only sustain half that rate. Fast I/O also decouples the MMIO load response from the cache-hit path. This way, MMIO requests and responses can happen on the same cycle, doubling the peak load throughput.

Note

Fast I/O is NOT an I/O port.

3.6 Atomic Memory Operations

The S7 core supports the RISC-V standard Atomic (A) extension on the Memory Port, Peripheral Port, and internal memory regions.

Atomic instructions that target the Memory Port are implemented in the data cache and are not observable on the external data bus. The load-reserved (LR) and store-conditional (SC) instructions are special atomic instructions that are only supported in data cacheable regions. They will generate a precise access exception if targeted at uncacheable data regions.

Atomic memory operations are not supported on the System Port. Atomic operations that target the System Port will generate a precise access exception.

See Section 5.4 for more information on the instructions added by this extension.

3.7 Floating-Point Unit (FPU)

The S7 FPU provides full hardware support for the IEEE 754-2008 floating-point standard for 32-bit single-precision and 64-bit double-precision arithmetic. The FPU includes a fully pipelined fused-multiply-add unit and an iterative divide and square-root unit, magnitude comparators, and float-to-integer conversion units, all with full hardware support for subnormals and all IEEE default values.

Section 5.5 describes the 32-bit single-precision instructions. Section 5.6 describes the 64-bit double-precision instructions.

The FPU comes up disabled on reset. First initialize fcsr and mstatus.FS prior to executing any floating-point instructions. In the freedom-metal startup code, write mstatus.FS[1:0] to 0x1.

3.8 Physical Memory Protection (PMP)

Machine mode is the highest privilege level and by default has read, write, and execute permissions across the entire memory map of the device. However, privilege levels below machine mode do not have read, write, or execute permissions to any region of the device memory map unless it is specifically allowed by the PMP. For the lower privilege levels, the PMP may grant permissions to specific regions of the device's memory map, but it can also revoke permissions when in machine mode.

When programmed accordingly, the PMP will check every access when the hart is operating in user mode. For machine mode, PMP checks do not occur unless the lock bit (L) is set in the pmpcfgY CSR for a particular region.

PMP checks also occur on loads and stores when the machine previous privilege level is user (mstatus.MPP=0x0), and the Modify Privilege bit is set (mstatus.MPRV=1).

The S7 PMP supports 8 regions with a minimum region size of 64 bytes.

This section describes how PMP concepts in the RISC-V architecture apply to the S7. For additional information on the PMP refer to *The RISC-V Instruction Set Manual, Volume II: Privileged Architecture, Version 1.11.*

3.8.1 PMP Functional Description

The S7 PMP unit has 8 regions and a minimum granularity of 64 bytes. Access to each region is controlled by an 8-bit pmpXcfg field and a corresponding pmpaddrX register. Overlapping regions are permitted, where the lower numbered pmpXcfg and pmpaddrX registers take priority over higher numbered regions. The S7 PMP unit implements the architecturally defined pmpcfgY CSR pmpcfg0, supporting 8 regions. pmpcfg2 is implemented, but hardwired to zero. Access to pmpcfg1 or pmpcfg3 results in an illegal instruction exception.

The PMP registers may only be programmed in M-mode. Ordinarily, the PMP unit enforces permissions on U-mode accesses. However, locked regions (see Section 3.8.2) additionally enforce their permissions on M-mode.

3.8.2 PMP Region Locking

The PMP allows for region locking whereby, once a region is locked, further writes to the configuration and address registers are ignored. Locked PMP entries may only be unlocked with a system reset. A region may be locked by setting the L bit in the pmpXcfg register.

In addition to locking the PMP entry, the L bit indicates whether the R/W/X permissions are enforced on machine mode accesses. When the L bit is clear, the R/W/X permissions apply only to U-mode.

3.8.3 PMP Registers

Each PMP region is described by an 8-bit pmpxcfg field, used in association with a 64-bit pmpaddrX register that holds the base address of the protected region. The range of each region depends on the Addressing (A) mode described in the next section. The pmpxcfg fields reside within 64-bit pmpcfgY CSRs.

Each 8-bit pmpxcfg field includes a read, write, and execute bit, plus a two bit address-matching field A, and a Lock bit, L. Overlapping regions are permitted, where the lowest numbered PMP entry wins for that region.

PMP Configuration Registers

For RV64 architectures, pmpcfg1 and pmpcfg3 are not implemented. This reduces the footprint since pmpcfg2 already contains configuration fields pmp8cfg through pmp11cfg for both RV32 and RV64.

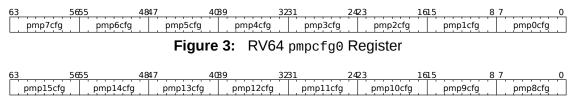


Figure 4: RV64 pmpcfg2 Register

The pmpcfgY and pmpaddrX registers are only accessible via CSR specific instructions such as csrr for reads, and csrw for writes.

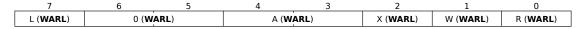


Figure 5: RV64 pmpXcfg bitfield

Bits	Description				
0	R: Read Permissions				
	0x0 - No read permissions for this region				
	0x1 - Read permission granted for this region				
1	W: Write Permissions				
	0x0 - No write permissions for this region				
	0x1 - Write permission granted for this region				
2	X: Execute permissions				
	0x0 - No execute permissions for this region				
	0x1 - Execute permission granted for this region				
[4:3]	A: Address matching mode				
	0x0 - PMP Entry disabled. No PMP protection applied for any privilege level.				
	 0x1 - Top of range (TOR) region defined by two adjacent pmpaddr registers. The upper limit of region X is defined by pmpaddrX, and the base of the region is defined by pmpaddr(X-1). Address 'a' matches the region if [pmpaddr(X-1) ≤ a < pmpaddrX]. If pmp@cfg defines a TOR region, then the base address of that region is 0x0, and pmpaddr@ defines the upper limit. Supports only a four byte granularity. 				
	 0x2 - Naturally aligned four-byte region (NA4). Supports only a four-byte region with four byte granularity. 				
	 0x3 - Naturally aligned power-of-two region (NAPOT), ≥ 8 bytes. When this setting is programmed, the low bits of the pmpaddrx register encode the size, while the upper bits encode the base address right shifted by two. There is a zero bit in between, we will refer to as the least significant zero bit (LSZB). 				
7	L: Lock Bit				
	0x0 - PMP Entry Unlocked, no permission restrictions applied to machine mode. PMP entry only applies to S and U modes.				
	 0x1 - PMP Entry Locked, permissions enforced for all privilege levels including machine mode. Writes to pmpXcfg and pmpcfgY are ignored and can only be cleared with system reset. 				
Note:	The combination of R=0 and W=1 is not currently implemented.				

Table 7: pmpXcfg Bitfield Description

Out of reset, the PMP register fields A and L are set to 0. All other hart state is unspecified by *The RISC-V Instruction Set Manual, Volume II: Privileged Architecture, Version 1.11*.

Some examples follow using NAPOT address mode.

Base Address	Region Size*	LSZB Position	pmpaddrX Value		
0x4000_0000	8 B	0	(0x1000_0000 1'b0)		
0x4000_0000	32 B	2	(0x1000_0000 3'b011)		
0x4000_0000	4 KB	9	(0x1000_0000 10'b01_1111_1111)		
0x4000_0000	64 KB	13	(0x1000_0000 14'b01_1111_1111_1111)		
0x4000_0000	1 MB	17	(0x1000_0000 18'b01_1111_1111_1111_1111)		
*Region size is 2 ^(LSZB+3) .					

Table 8: pmpaddrX Encoding Examples for A=NAPOT

PMP Address Registers

The PMP has 8 address registers. Each address register pmpaddrX correlates to the respective pmpXcfg field. Each address register contains the base address of the protected region right shifted by two, for a minimum 4-byte alignment.

The maximum encoded address bits per *The RISC-V Instruction Set Manual, Volume II: Privileged Architecture, Version 1.11* are [55:2].

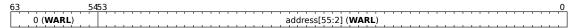


Figure 6: RV64 pmpaddrX Register

3.8.4 PMP and PMA

The PMP values are used in conjunction with the Physical Memory Attributes (PMAs) described in Section 4.1. Since the PMAs are static and not configurable, the PMP can only revoke read, write, or execute permissions to the PMA regions if those permissions already apply statically.

3.8.5 PMP Programming Overview

The PMP registers can only be programmed in machine mode. The pmpaddrX register should be first programmed with the base address of the protected region, right shifted by two. Then, the pmpcfgY register should be programmed with the properly configured 64-bit value containing each properly aligned 8-bit pmpXcfg field. Fields that are not used can be simply written to 0, marking them unused.

PMP Programming Example

The following example shows a machine mode only configuration where PMP permissions are applied to three regions of interest, and a fourth region covers the remaining memory map. Recall that lower numbered pmpxcfg and pmpaddrx registers take priority over higher numbered regions. This rule allows higher numbered PMP registers to have blanket coverage over the entire memory map while allowing lower numbered regions to apply permissions to specific regions of interest. The following example shows a 64 KB Flash region at base address 0x0, a

32 KB RAM region at base address 0x2000_0000, and finally a 4 KB peripheral region at base address base 0x3000_0000. The rest of the memory map is reserved space.

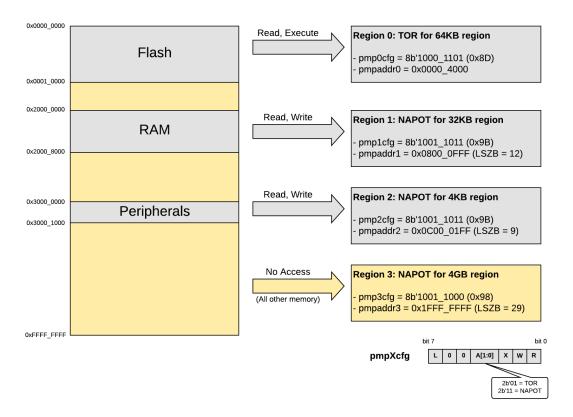


Figure 7: PMP Example Block Diagram

PMP Access Scenarios

The L, R, W, and X bits only determine if an access succeeds if all bytes of that access are covered by that PMP entry. For example, if a PMP entry is configured to match the four-byte range 0xC–0xF, then an 8-byte access to the range 0x8–0xF will fail, assuming that PMP entry is the highest-priority entry that matches those addresses.

While operating in machine mode when the lock bit is clear (L=0), if a PMP entry matches all bytes of an access, the access succeeds. If the lock bit is set (L=1) while in machine mode, then the access depends on the permissions set for that region. Similarly, while in Supervisor mode, the access depends on permissions set for that region.

Failed read or write accesses generate a load or store access exception, and an instruction access fault would occur on a failed instruction fetch. When an exception occurs while attempting to execute from a region without execute permissions, the fault occurs on the fetch and not the branch, so the mepc CSR will reflect the value of the targeted protected region, and not the address of the branch.

It is possible for a single instruction to generate multiple accesses, which may not be mutually atomic. If at least one access generated by an instruction fails, then an exception will occur. It might be possible that other accesses from a single instruction will succeed, with visible side effects. For example, references to virtual memory may be decomposed into multiple accesses.

On some implementations, misaligned loads, stores, and instruction fetches may also be decomposed into multiple accesses, some of which may succeed before an access exception occurs. In particular, a portion of a misaligned store that passes the PMP check may become visible, even if another portion fails the PMP check. The same behavior may manifest for floating-point stores wider than XLEN bits (e.g., the FSD instruction in RV32D), even when the store address is naturally aligned.

3.8.6 PMP and Paging

The Physical Memory Protection mechanism is designed to compose with the page-based virtual memory systems described in *The RISC-V Instruction Set Manual, Volume II: Privileged Architecture, Version 1.11.* When paging is enabled, instructions that access virtual memory may result in multiple physical-memory accesses, including implicit references to the page tables. The PMP checks apply to all of these accesses. The effective privilege mode for implicit page-table accesses is supervisor mode.

Implementations with virtual memory are permitted to perform address translations speculatively and earlier than required by an explicit virtual-memory access. The PMP settings for the resulting physical address may be checked at any point between the address translation and the explicit virtual-memory access. A mis-predicted branch to a non-executable address range does not generate a trap. Hence, when the PMP settings are modified in a manner that affects either the physical memory that holds the page tables or the physical memory to which the page tables point, M-mode software must synchronize the PMP settings with the virtual memory system. This is accomplished by executing an SFENCE.VMA instruction with rs1=x0 and rs2=x0, after the PMP CSRs are written.

If page-based virtual memory is not implemented, or when it is disabled, memory accesses check the PMP settings synchronously, so no fence is needed.

3.8.7 PMP Limitations

In a system containing multiple harts, each hart has its own PMP device. The PMP permissions on a hart cannot be applied to accesses from other harts in a multi-hart system. In addition, SiFive designs may contain a Front Port to allow external bus masters access to the full memory map of the system. The PMP cannot prevent access from external bus masters on the Front Port.

3.8.8 Behavior for Regions without PMP Protection

If a non-reserved region of the memory map does not have PMP permissions applied, then by default, supervisor or user mode accesses will fail, while machine mode access will be allowed.

Access to reserved regions within a device's memory map (an interrupt controller for example) will return 0x0 on reads, and writes will be ignored. Access to reserved regions outside of a device's memory map without PMP protection will result in a bus error.

3.8.9 Cache Flush Behavior on PMP Protected Region

When a line is brought into cache and the PMP is set up with the lock (L) bit asserted to protect a part of that line, a data cache flush instruction will generate a store access fault exception if the flush includes any part of the line that is protected. The cache flush instruction does an invalidate and write-back, so it is essentially trying to write back to the memory location that is protected. If a cache flush occurs on a part of the line that was not protected, the flush will succeed and not generate an exception. If a data cache flush is required without a write-back, use the cache discard instruction instead, as this will invalidate but not write back the line.

3.9 Hardware Performance Monitor

The S7 processor core supports a basic hardware performance monitoring (HPM) facility. The performance monitoring facility is divided into two classes of counters: fixed-function and event-programmable counters. These classes consist of a set of fixed counters and their counterenable registers, as well as a set of event-programmable counters and their event selector registers. The registers are available to control the behavior of the counters. Performance monitoring can be useful for multiple purposes, from optimization to debug.

3.9.1 Performance Monitoring Counters Reset Behavior

The instret and cycle counters are initialized to zero on system reset. The hardware performance monitor event counters are not initialized on system reset, and thus have an arbitrary value. Users can write desired values to the counter control and status registers (CSRs) to start counting at a given, known value.

3.9.2 Fixed-Function Performance Monitoring Counters

A fixed-function performance monitor counter is hardware wired to only count one specific event type. That is, they cannot be reconfigured with respect to the event type(s) they count. The only modification to the fixed-function performance monitoring counters that can be done is to enable or disable counting, and write the counter value itself.

The S7 processor core contains two fixed-function performance monitoring counters.

Fixed-Function Cycle Counter (mcycle)

The fixed-function performance monitoring counter mcycle holds a count of the number of clock cycles the hart has executed since some arbitrary time in the past. The mcycle counter is readwrite and 64 bits wide. Reads of mcycle return all 64 bits of the mcycle CSR.

Fixed-Function Instructions-Retired Counter (minstret)

The fixed-function performance monitoring counter minstret holds a count of the number of instructions the hart has retired since some arbitrary time in the past. The minstret counter is read-write and 64 bits wide. Reads of minstret return all 64 bits of the minstret CSR.

3.9.3 Event-Programmable Performance Monitoring Counters

Complementing the fixed-function counters are a set of programmable event counters. The S7 HPM includes two additional event counters, mhpmcounter3 and mhpmcounter4. These programmable event counters are read-write and 64 bits wide. The hardware counters themselves are implemented as 40-bit counters on the S7 core series. These hardware counters can be written to in order to initialize the counter value.

3.9.4 Event Selector Registers

To control the event type to count, event selector CSRs mhpmevent3 and mhpmevent4 are used to program the corresponding event counters. These event selector CSRs are 64-bit **WARL** registers.

The event selectors are partitioned into three fields; the lower 8 bits select an event class, a middle set of bits that form a mask of events in that class, with the upper 8-bits used for counter overflow and event filtering.



Figure 8: Event Selector Fields

The counter increments if the event corresponding to any set mask bit occurs. For example, if mhpmevent3 is set to 0x4200, then mhpmcounter3 will increment when either a load instruction or a conditional branch instruction retires. An event selector of 0 means "count nothing".

Counter Overflow and Event Filters

The upper 8-bits of the mhmpevent register are used for controlling a counter overflow interrupt, as well as mode-based event filtering. The bit layout is shown below:

	Machine Hardware Performance Monitor Event Register					
Bits	Name	Attr	Description			
[7:0]	Class	WARL	Selects the Event Class to make available for counting			
[55:8]	EventSel	WARL	Bit-mask of Event(s) to count			
[57:56]	Reserved	_				
58	VUINH	WARL	Reserved			
59	VSINH	WARL	Reserved			
60	UINH	WARL	If set, counting of events in U-mode is inhibited			
61	SINH	WARL	Reserved			
62	MINH	RW	If set, then counting of events in M-mode is inhibited			
63	0F	RW	Overflow status and interrupt disable bit. Set by hardware			
			when counter overflows.			

Table 9: mhpmeventX Register Bit Layout for Overflow and Filtering

Performance Counter Overflow Operation

Each of the five xINH bits inhibits counting of event when the core is in privilege mode x. All zeroes in these fields results in counting of events in all modes.

The OF bit is set by hardware when the corresponding hpmcounterX overflows and remains set until written by software. Since hpmcounter values are unsigned, overflow is defined as incrementing from all-ones to all-zeroes. Note that there is no loss of information after an overflow since the counter wraps around and keeps counting while the sticky OF bit remains set.

If an hpmcounter overflows while the associated OF bit is zero, then a *count overflow interrupt request* is generated. If an hpmcounter overflows while the associated OF bit is one, then no interrupt is generated. Consequently, the OF bit also functions as a count overflow interrupt disable for the associated hpmcounter.

Count overflow never results from writes to the mhpmcounterX or mhpmeventX registers. Overflow occurs only as a result of an event causing a counter to increment.

The counter overflow interrupt is a standard local interrupt that corresponds to bit 13 in the mip and mie registers. The mip LCOFIP bit is the interrupt-pending bit for this interrupt and the mie LCOFIE bit is the interrupt-enable bit for this interrupt. LCOFI represents Local Count Overflow Interrupt. If S-mode is present, sip and sie include the corresponding bits for supervisor interrupt control and status.

Generation of a count overflow interrupt request by an hpmcounter sets the LCOFIP bit in the mip register and sets the associated OF bit. If S-mode is present, the mideleg register controls the delegation of this interrupt to S-mode, which sets the LCOFIP bit in the sip register. The LCOFIP bit is cleared by software after servicing the count overflow interrupt.

Multiple simultaneous interrupts destined for the same privilege mode are handled in the following decreasing priority order: MEI, MSI, MTI, SEI, SSI, STI, LCOFI.

Note that there are not separate overflow status and overflow interrupt enable bits. In practice, enabling overflow interrupt generation by clearing the OF bit is done in conjunction with initializing the counter to a starting value. Once a counter has overflowed, it and the OF bit must be reinitialized before another overflow interrupt can be generated.

Software can distinguish newly-overflowed counters which have yet to be serviced by an overflow interrupt handler from overflowed counters that have already been serviced (or that are configured not to generate an interrupt on overflow by maintaining a bit mask reflecting which counters are active and due to overflow eventually.

Disabling Counters in Debug Mode

When set, the dcsr.stopcount bit stops counters while in debug mode. This is especially important for mcycle and minstret counters, since in debug mode, the core is executing ROM instructions in a tight loop. The Freedom Studio Performance Monitor View automatically sets the dcsr.stopcount bit.

3.9.5 Event Selector Encodings

Table 10 describes the event selector encodings available. Events are categorized into classes based on the Event Class field encoded in mhpmeventx[7:0]. One or more events can be programmed by setting the respective Event Mask bit for a given event class. An event selector encoding of 0 means "count nothing". Multiple events will cause the counter to increment any time any of the selected events occur.

Mach	Machine Hardware Performance Monitor Event Register					
Instruction Commit Events, mhpmeventX[7:0]=0x0						
Bits	Description					
8	Exception taken					
9	Integer load instruction retired					
10	Integer store instruction retired					
11	Atomic memory operation retired					
12	System instruction retired					
13	Integer arithmetic instruction retired					
14	Conditional branch retired					
15	JAL instruction retired					
16	JALR instruction retired					
17	Integer multiplication instruction retired					
18	Integer division instruction retired					
19	Floating-point load instruction retired					
20	Floating-point store instruction retired					
21	Floating-point addition retired					
22	Floating-point multiplication retired					
23	Floating-point fused multiply-add retired					
24	Floating-point division or square-root retired					
25	Other floating-point instruction retired					
N	Nicroarchitectural Events, mhpmeventX[7:0]=0x1					
Bits	Description					
8	Address-generation interlock					
9	Long-latency interlock					
10	CSR read interlock					
11	Instruction cache/ITIM busy					
12	Data cache/DTIM busy					
13	Branch direction misprediction					
14	Branch/jump target misprediction					
15	Pipeline flush from CSR write					
16	Pipeline flush from other event					
17	Integer multiplication interlock					
18	Floating-point interlock					
	Memory System Events, mhpmeventX[7:0]=0x2					
Bits Description						
8	Instruction cache miss					
9	Data cache miss or memory-mapped I/O access					
10	Data cache write-back					

Table 10: mhpmevent Register

Event mask bits that are writable for any event class are writable for all classes. Setting an event mask bit that does not correspond to an event defined in Table 10 has no effect for current

implementations. However, future implementations may define new events in that encoding space, so it is not recommended to program unsupported values into the mhpmevent registers.

Combining Events

It is common usage to directly count each respective event. Additionally, it is possible to use combinations of these events to count new, unique events. For example, to determine the average cycles per load from a data memory subsystem, program one counter to count "Data cache/DTIM busy" and another counter to count "Integer load instruction retired". Then, simply divide the "Data cache/DTIM busy" cycle count by the "Integer load instruction retired" instruction count and the result is the average cycle time for loads in cycles per instruction.

It is important to be cognizant of the event types being combined; specifically, event types counting occurrences and event types counting cycles.

3.9.6 Counter-Enable Registers

The 32-bit counter-enable register mcounteren controls the availability of the hardware performance-monitoring counters to the next-lowest privileged mode.

The settings in these registers only control accessibility. The act of reading or writing these enable registers does not affect the underlying counters, which continue to increment when not accessible.

When any bit in the mcounteren register is clear, attempts to read the cycle, time, instruction retire, or hpmcounterX register while executing in U-mode will cause an illegal instruction exception. When one of these bits is set, access to the corresponding register is permitted in the next implemented privilege mode, U-mode.

mcounteren is a **WARL** register. Any of the bits may contain a hardwired value of zero, indicating reads to the corresponding counter will cause an illegal instruction exception when executing in a less-privileged mode.

3.10 Ports

This section describes the Port interfaces to the S7 core.

3.10.1 Front Port

The Front Port can be used by external masters to read from and write into the memory system utilizing any Memory Port in the Core Complex. The ITIM can also be accessed through the Front Port. Transactions cannot be routed from the Front Port to any System or Peripheral Ports.

If a Front Port access targets the Memory Port, a coherency manager is responsible for maintaining coherency with the L1 and L2 caches. A read access can be returned directly from the

caches without generating an external bus access. If a write from the Front Port targets a location in the L1 data cache, it results in the line being evicted and invalidated. The write will then allocate to the L2 cache.

Any Front Port access that targets the Memory Port and results in an L1 and L2 cache miss will allocate to the L2 cache.

The S76-MC Core Complex User Guide describes the implementation details of the Front Port.

3.10.2 Memory Port

The Memory Port is used to interface with memory that offers the highest performance for the S76-MC Core Complex, such as DDR. It supports cacheable accesses for data and instructions.

Consult Section 4.1 for further information about the Memory Port and its Physical Memory Attributes.

See the S76-MC Core Complex User Guide for a description of the Memory Port implementation in the S76-MC Core Complex.

3.10.3 Peripheral Port

The Peripheral Port is used to interface with lower speed peripherals and also supports code execution. When a device is attached to the Peripheral Port, it is expected that there are no other masters connected to that device.

Consult Section 4.1 for further information about the Peripheral Port and its Physical Memory Attributes.

See the S76-MC Core Complex User Guide for a description of the Peripheral Port implementation in the S76-MC Core Complex.

3.10.4 System Port

The System Port is used to interface with lower performance memory, like SRAM, memory-mapped I/O (MMIO), and higher speed peripherals. The System Port also supports code execution.

Consult Section 4.1 for further information about the System Port and its Physical Memory Attributes.

See the S76-MC Core Complex User Guide for a description of the System Port implementation in the S76-MC Core Complex.

Chapter 4

Physical Memory Attributes and Memory Map

This chapter describes the S76-MC Core Complex physical memory attributes and memory map.

4.1 Physical Memory Attributes Overview

The memory map is divided into different regions covering on-core-complex memory, system memory, peripherals, and empty holes. Physical memory attributes (PMAs) describe the properties of the accesses that can be made to each region in the memory map. These properties encompass the type of access that may be performed: execute, read, or write. As well as other optional attributes related to the access, such as supported access size, alignment, atomic operations, and cacheability.

RISC-V utilizes a simpler approach than other processor architectures in defining the attributes of memory accesses. Instead of defining access characteristics in page table descriptors or memory protection logic, the properties are fixed for memory regions or may only be modified in platform-specific control registers. As most systems don't require the ability to modify PMAs, SiFive cores only support fixed PMAs, which are set at design time. This results in a simpler design with lower gate count and power savings, and an easier programming interface.

External memory map regions are accessed through a specific port type and that port type is used to define the PMAs. The port types are Memory, Peripheral, and System. Memory map regions defined for internal memory and internal control regions also have a predefined PMA based on the underlying contents of the region.

The assigned PMA properties and attributes for S76-MC Core Complex memory regions are shown in Table 11 and Table 12 for external and internal regions, respectively.

The configured memory regions of the S76-MC Core Complex are listed with their attributes in Table 13.

Port Type	Access Properties	Attributes
Memory Port Read, Write, Execute		Atomics+LR/SC, Data Cacheable, Instruction
		Cacheable, Instruction Speculation
Peripheral Port	Read, Write, Execute	Atomics, Instruction Cacheable
System Port	Read, Write, Execute	Instruction Cacheable

Table 11: Physical Memory Attributes for External Regions

Region	Access Properties	Attributes
CLINT	Read, Write	Atomics
Data Local Store	Read, Write, Execute	Atomics, Instruction Cacheable
Debug	None	N/A
Error Device	Read, Write, Execute	Atomics
ITIM	Read, Write, Execute	Atomics, Instruction Speculation
L2 Cache Controller	Read, Write	Atomics
L2 LIM	Read, Write, Execute	Atomics
L2 Prefetcher	Read, Write	Atomics
L2 Zero Device	Read, Write, Execute	Atomics, Instruction Cacheable
PLIC	Read, Write	Atomics
Reserved	None	N/A
SLPC	Read, Write	Atomics

 Table 12: Physical Memory Attributes for Internal Regions

All memory map regions support word, half-word, and byte size data accesses.

Atomic access support enables the RISC-V standard Atomic (A) Extension for atomic instructions. These atomic instructions are further documented in Section 3.6 for the S7 core. The load-reserved (LR) and store-conditional (SC) instructions are only supported on the data cacheable region, marked in Table 11 with "Atomics+LR/SC".

No region supports unaligned accesses. An unaligned access will generate the appropriate trap: instruction address misaligned, load address misaligned, or store/AMO address misaligned.

The Physical Memory Protection unit is capable of controlling access properties based on address ranges, not ports. It has no control over the attributes of an address range, however.

Note

The Debug and Error Device regions have special behavior. The Debug region is reserved for use from a Debugger, and all accesses to it from the core in non-Debug mode will trap. The Error Device will also trap all accesses, as described in Chapter 10.

4.2 Memory Map

The memory map of the S76-MC Core Complex is shown in Table 13.

Base Top PMA		Description	
0x0000_0000	0x0000_0FFF		Debug
0x0000_1000	0x0000_2FFF		Reserved
0x0000_3000	0x0000_3FFF	RWX A	Error Device
0x0000_4000	0x017F_FFFF		Reserved
0x0180_0000	0x0180_7FFF	RWX A	Hart 0 ITIM
0x0180_8000	0x0181_FFFF		Reserved
0x0182_0000	0x0182_7FFF	RWX A	Hart 1 ITIM
0x0182_8000	0x0183_FFFF		Reserved
0x0184_0000	0x0184_7FFF	RWX A	Hart 2 ITIM
0x0184_8000	0x0185_FFFF		Reserved
0x0186_0000	0x0186_7FFF	RWX A	Hart 3 ITIM
0x0186_8000	0x01FF_FFFF		Reserved
0x0200_0000	0x0200_FFFF	RW A	CLINT
0x0201_0000	0x0201_3FFF	RW A	L2 Cache Controller
0x0201_4000	0x0202_FFFF		Reserved
0x0203_0000	0x0203_1FFF	RW A	Hart 0 L2 Prefetcher
0x0203_2000	0x0203_3FFF	RW A	Hart 1 L2 Prefetcher
0x0203_4000	0x0203_5FFF	RW A	Hart 2 L2 Prefetcher
0x0203_6000	0x0203_7FFF	RW A	Hart 3 L2 Prefetcher
0x0203_8000	0x0300_7FFF		Reserved
0x0300_8000	0x0300_8FFF	RW A	SLPC
0x0300_9000	0x07FF_FFFF		Reserved
0x0800_0000	0x0807_FFFF	RWX A	L2 LIM
0x0808_0000	0x09FF_FFFF		Reserved
0x0A00_0000	0x0A07_FFFF	RWXI A	L2 Zero Device
0x0A08_0000	0x0BFF_FFFF		Reserved
0x0C00_0000	0x0FFF_FFFF	RW A	PLIC
0x1000_0000	0x1FFF_FFFF		Reserved
0x2000_0000	0x3FFF_FFFF	RWXI A	Peripheral Port (512 MiB)
0x4000_0000	0x5FFF_FFF	RWXI	System Port (512 MiB)
0x6000_0000	0x6FFF_FFFF		Reserved
0x7000_0000	0x7000_7FFF	RWXI A	Hart 0 Data Local Store
0x7000_8000	0x7000_FFFF	RWXI A	Hart 1 Data Local Store
0x7001_0000	0x7001_7FFF	RWXI A	Hart 2 Data Local Store
0x7001_8000	0x7001_FFFF	RWXI A	Hart 3 Data Local Store
0x7002_0000	0x7FFF_FFFF		Reserved
0×8000_0000	0x9FFF_FFFF	RWXIDA	Memory Port (512 MiB)
0×A000_0000	0xFFFF_FFFF		Reserved

Table 13: S76-MC Core Complex Memory Map. Physical Memory Attributes: **R**–Read, **W**–Write, **X**–Execute, **I**–Instruction Cacheable, **D**–Data Cacheable, **A**–Atomics

Note

Every component that appears in Table 13 is accessible by any core in the Core Complex.

Chapter 5

Programmer's Model

The S76-MC Core Complex implements the 64-bit RISC-V architecture. The following chapter provides a reference for programmers and an explanation of the extensions supported by RV64GC_Zba_Zbb_Sscofpmf.

This chapter contains a high-level discussion of the RISC-V instruction set architecture and additional resources which will assist software developers working with RISC-V products. The S76-MC Core Complex is an implementation of the RISC-V *RV64GC_Zba_Zbb_Sscofpmf* architecture, and is guaranteed to be compatible with all applicable RISC-V standards. *RV64GC_Zba_Zbb_Sscofpmf* can emulate almost any other RISC-V ISA extension.

5.1 Base Instruction Formats

RISC-V base instructions are fixed to 32 bits in length and must be aligned on a four-byte boundary in memory. RISC-V ISA keeps the source (rs1 and rs2) and destination (rd) registers at the same position in all formats to simplify decoding, with the exception of the 5-bit immediates used in CSR instructions.

The various formats are described in Table 14 below.

Format	Description
R	Format for register-register arithmetic/logical operations.
I	Format for register-immediate ALU operations and loads.
S	Format for stores.
В	Format for branches.
U	Format for 20-bit upper immediate instructions.
J	Format for jumps.

Table 14: Base Instruction Formats

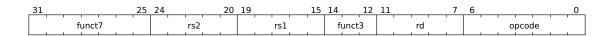
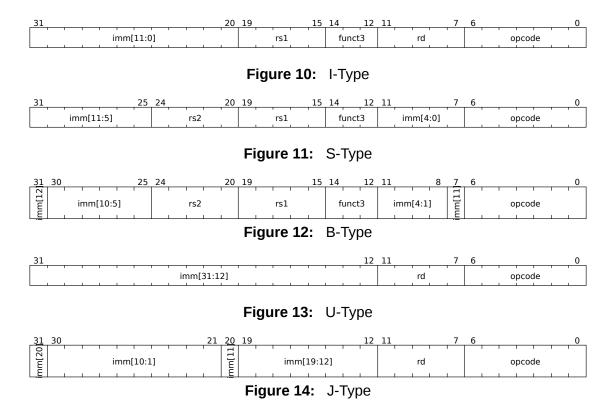


Figure 9: R-Type



The **opcode** field partially specifies an instruction, combined with **funct7** + **funct3** which describe what operation to perform. Each register field (**rs1**, **rs2**, **rd**) holds a 5-bit unsigned integer (0-31) corresponding to a register number (x0 - x31). Sign-extension is one of the most critical operations on immediates (particularly for XLEN>32), and in RISC-V the sign bit for all immediates is always held in bit 31 of the instruction to allow sign-extension to proceed in parallel with instruction decoding.

5.2 RV64I Base Integer Instruction Set

This section discusses the standard integer instructions supported by RISC-V. Integer computational instructions don't cause arithmetic exceptions.

5.2.1 R-Type (Register-Based) Integer Instructions

funct7			funct3		opcode	Instruction
00000000	rs2	rs1	000	rd	0110011	ADD
01000000	rs2	rs1	000	rd	0110011	SUB
00000000	rs2	rs1	001	rd	0110011	SLL
00000000	rs2	rs1	010	rd	0110011	SLT
00000000	rs2	rs1	011	rd	0110011	SLTU
00000000	rs2	rs1	100	rd	0110011	XOR
00000000	rs2	rs1	101	rd	0110011	SRL
01000000	rs2	rs1	101	rd	0110011	SRA
00000000	rs2	rs1	110	rd	0110011	OR
00000000	rs2	rs1	111	rd	0110011	AND

Table 15: R-Type Integer Instructions

Instruction	Description
ADD rd, rs1, rs2	Performs the addition of rs1 and rs2, result stored in rd.
SUB rd, rs1, rs2	Performs the subtraction of rs2 from rs1, result stored in rd.
SLL rd, rs1, rs2	Logical left shift (zeros are shifted into the lower bits) shift amount is encoded in the lower 5 bits of rs2.
SLT rd, x0, rs2	Signed and compare sets rd to 1 if rs2 is not equal to zero, otherwise sets rd to zero.
SLTU rd, x0, rs2	Unsigned compare sets rd to 1 if rs2 is not equal to zero, otherwise sets rd to zero.
SRL rd, rs1, rs2	Logical right shift (zeros are shifted into the lower bits) shift amount is encoded in the lower 5 bits of rs2.
SRA rd, rs1, rs2	Arithmetic right shift, shift amount is encoded in the lower 5 bits of rs2.
OR rd, rs1, rs2	Bitwise logical OR.
AND rd, rs1, rs2	Bitwise logical AND.
XOR rd, rs1, rs2	Bitwise logical XOR.

Table 16: R-Type Integer Instruction Description

Below is an example of an ADD instruction.

add x18, x19, x10

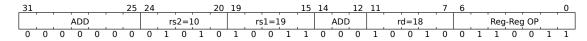


Figure 15: ADD Instruction Example

5.2.2 I-Type Integer Instructions

For I-Type integer instruction, one field is different from R-format. rs2 and funct7 are replaced by the 12-bit signed immediate, imm[11:0], which can hold values in range [-2048, +2047]. The immediate is always sign-extended to 32-bits before being used in an arithmetic operation. Bits [31:12] receive the same value as bit 11.

imm			func3		opcode	Instruction
imm[11:0]		rs1	000	rd	0010011	ADDI
imm[11:0]		rs1	010	rd	0010011	SLTI
imm[11:0]		rs1	011	rd	0010011	SLTIU
imm[11:0]		rs1	100	rd	0010011	XORI
imm[11:0]		rs1	110	rd	0010011	ORI
imm[11:0]		rs1	111	rd	0010011	ANDI
00000000	shamnt	rs1	001	rd	0010011	SLLI
00000000	shamnt	rs1	101	rd	0010011	SRLI
01000000	shamnt	rs1	001	rd	0010011	SRAI

Table 17: I-Type Integer Instructions

One of the higher-order immediate bits is used to distinguish "shift right logical" (SRLI) from "shift right arithmetic" (SRAI).

Instruction	Description
ADDI	Adds the sign-extended 12-bit immediate to register rs1. Arithmetic overflow is
	ignored and the result is simply the low 64-bits of the result. ADDI rd, rs1, 0 is
	used to implement the MV rd, rs1 assembler pseudoinstruction.
SLTI	Set less than immediate. Places the value 1 in register rd if register rs1 is less
	than the sign extended immediate when both are treated as signed numbers,
	else 0 is written to rd.
SLTIU	Compares the values as unsigned numbers (i.e., the immediate is first
	sign-extended to 64-bits then treated as an unsigned number). Note: SLTIU rd,
	rs1, 1 sets rd to 1 if rs1 equals zero, otherwise sets rd to 0 (assembler
	pseudo instruction SEQZ rd, rs).
XORI	Bitwise XOR on register rs1 and the sign-extended 12-bit immediate and place
	the result in rd.
ORI	Bitwise OR on register rs1 and the sign-extended 12-bit immediate and place
	the result in rd.
ANDI	Bitwise AND on register rs1 and the sign-extended 12-bit immediate and place
	the result in rd.
SLLI	Shift Left Logical. The operand to be shifted is in rs1, and the shift amount is
	encoded in the lower 5 bits of the I-immediate field.
SRLI	Shift Right Logical. The operand to be shifted is in rs1, and the shift amount is
	encoded in the lower 5 bits of the I-immediate field.
SRAI	Shift Right Arithmetic. The operand to be shifted is in rs1, and the shift amount
	is encoded in the lower 5 bits of the I-immediate field (the original sign bit is
	copied into the vacated upper bits).

Table 18: I-Type Integer Instruction Description

Shift-by-immediate instructions only use lower 5 bits of the immediate value for shift amount (can only shift by 0-31 bit positions).

Below is an example of an ADDI instruction.

addi x15, x1, -50

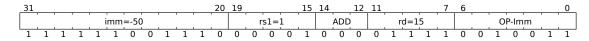


Figure 16: ADDI Instruction Example

5.2.3 I-Type Load Instructions

For I-Type load instructions, a 12-bit signed immediate is added to the base address in register rs1 to form the memory address. In Table 19 below, **funct3** field encodes size and signedness of load data.

imm		func3		opcode	Instruction
imm[11:0]	rs1	000	rd	0000011	LB
imm[11:0]	rs1	001	rd	00000011	LH
imm[11:0]	rs1	010	rd	00000011	LW
imm[11:0]	rs1	100	rd	00000011	LBU
imm[11:0]	rs1	101	rd	00000011	LHU

Table 19: I-Type Load Instructions

Instruction	Description
LB rd, rs1, imm	Load Byte, loads 8 bits (1 byte) and sign-extends to fill
	destination 32-bit register.
LH rd, rs1, imm	Load Half-Word. Loads 16 bits (2 bytes) and sign-extends to fill
	destination 32-bit register.
LW rd, rs1, imm	Load Word, 32 bits.
LBU rd, rs1, imm	Load Unsigned Byte (8-bit).
LHU rd, rs1, imm	Load Unsigned Half-Word, which zero-extends 16 bits to fill
	destination 32-bit register.

Table 20: I-Type Load Instruction Description

Below is an example of a LW instruction.

lw x14, 8(x2)

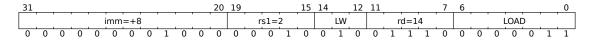


Figure 17: LW Instruction Example

5.2.4 S-Type Store Instructions

Store instructions need to read two registers: rs1 for base memory address and rs2 for data to be stored, as well as an immediate offset. The effective byte address is obtained by adding register rs1 to the sign-extended 12-bit offset. Note that stores don't write a value to the register file, as there is no rd register used by the instruction. In RISC-V, the lower 5 bits of immediate are moved to where the rd field was in other instructions, and the rs1/rs2 fields are kept in same place. The registers are kept always in the same place because a critical path for all operations includes fetching values from the registers. By always placing the read sources in the same place, the register file can read the registers without hesitation. If the data ends up being unnecessary (e.g., I-Type), it can be ignored.

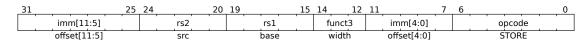


Figure 18: Store Instructions

imm			func3	imm	opcode	Instruction
imm[11:5]	rs2	rs1	000	imm[4:0]	01000011	SB
imm[11:5]	rs2	rs1	001	imm[4:0]	01000011	SH
imm[11:5]	rs2	rs1	010	imm[4:0]	01000011	SW

Table 21: S-Type Store Instructions

Instruction	Description
SB rs2, imm[11:0](rs1)	Store 8-bit value from the low bits of register rs2 to memory.
SH rs2, imm[11:0](rs1)	Store 16-bit value from the low bits of register rs2 to memory.
SW rs2,	Store 32-bit value from the low bits of register rs2 to memory.
imm[11:0](rs1)	

Table 22: S-Type Store Instruction Description

Below is an example SW instruction.

sw x14, 8(x2)

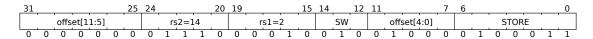


Figure 19: SW Instruction Example

5.2.5 Unconditional Jumps

The jump and link (JAL) instruction uses the J-type format, where the J-immediate encodes a signed offset in multiples of 2 bytes. The offset is sign-extended and added to the address of the jump instruction to form the jump target address. Jumps can therefore target a ± 1 MiB range. JAL stores the address of the instruction following the jump (pc+4) into register rd. The standard software calling convention uses $\times 1$ as the return address register and $\times 5$ as an alternate link register.



Figure 20: JAL Instruction

The indirect jump instruction JALR (jump and link register) uses the I-type encoding. The target address is obtained by adding the sign-extended 12-bit I-immediate to the register rs1, then setting the least-significant bit of the result to zero. The address of the instruction following the jump (pc+4) is written to register rd. Register x0 can be used as the destination if the result is not required.

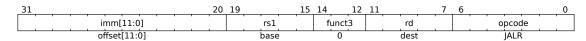


Figure 21: JALR Instruction

Both JAL and JALR instructions will generate an instruction-address-misaligned exception if the target address is not aligned to a four-byte boundary.

Instruction	Description
JAL rd, imm[20:1]	Jump and link
JALR rd, rs1, imm[11:0]	Jump and link register

Table 23: J-Type Instruction Description

5.2.6 Conditional Branches

All branch instructions use the B-Type instruction format. The 12-bit immediate represents values -4096 to \pm 4094 in 2-byte increments. The offset is sign-extended and added to the address of the branch instruction to give the target address. The conditional branch range is \pm 4 KiB.

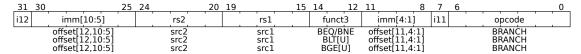


Figure 22: Branch Instructions

imm			func3	imm	opcode	Instruction
imm[12,10:5]	rs2	rs1	000	imm[4:1,11]	110011	BEQ
imm[12,10:5]	rs2	rs1	001	imm[4:1,11]	110011	BNE
imm[12,10:5]	rs2	rs1	100	imm[4:1,11]	110011	BLT
imm[12,10:5]	rs2	rs1	101	imm[4:1,11]	110011	BGE
imm[12,10:5]	rs2	rs1	110	imm[4:1,11]	110011	BLTU
imm[12,10:5]	rs2	rs1	111	imm[4:1,11]	110011	BGEU

Table 24: B-Type Instructions

Instruction	Description
BEQ rs1, rs2,	Take the branch if registers rs1 and rs2 are equal.
imm[12:1]	
BNE rs1, rs2, imm[12:1]	Take the branch if registers rs1 and rs2 are unequal.
BLT rs1, rs2, imm[12:1]	Take the branch if rs1 is less than rs2.
BGE rs1, rs2,	Take the branch if rs1 is greater than or equal to rs2.
imm[12:1]	
BLTU rs1, rs2,	Take the branch if rs1 is less than rs2 (unsigned).
imm[12:1]	
BGEU rs1, rs2,	Take the branch if rs1 is greater than or equal to rs2
imm[12:1]	(unsigned).

Table 25: B-Type Instruction Description

ISA Base Instruction Pseudoinstruction		Description
BEQ rs, x0, offset	BEQZ rs, offset	Take the branch if rs is equal to zero.

Table 26: RISC-V Base Instruction to Assembly Pseudoinstruction Example

Note

Software should be optimized such that the sequential code path is the most common path, with less-frequently taken code paths placed out of line. Software should also assume that backward branches will be predicted taken and forward branches as not taken, at least the first time they are encountered. Dynamic predictors should quickly learn any predictable branch behavior.

5.2.7 Upper-Immediate Instructions



Figure 23: Upper-Immediate Instructions

LUI (load upper immediate) is used to build 32-bit constants and uses the U-type format. LUI places the U-immediate value in the top 20 bits of the destination register rd, filling in the lowest 12 bits with zeros. Together with an ADDI to set low 12 bits, can create any 32-bit value in a register using two instructions (LUI/ADDI).

For example:

LUI x10, 0x87654 # x10 = 0 $x8765_4000$

ADDI x10, x10, 0x321 # **x10** = 0x8765_4321

AUIPC (add upper immediate to pc) is used to build pc-relative addresses and uses the U-type format. AUIPC forms a 32-bit offset from the 20-bit U-immediate, filling in the lowest 12 bits with zeros, and adds this offset to the address of the AUIPC instruction, then places the result in register rd.

5.2.8 Memory Ordering Operations

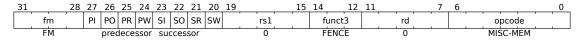


Figure 24: FENCE Instructions

The FENCE instruction is used to order device I/O and memory accesses as viewed by other RISC-V harts and external devices or coprocessors. Any combination of device input (I), device

output (O), memory reads (R), and memory writes (W) may be ordered with respect to any combination of the same. These operations are discussed further in Section 5.14.

5.2.9 Environment Call and Breakpoints

SYSTEM instructions are used to access system functionality that might require privileged access and are encoded using the I-type instruction format. These can be divided into two main classes: those that atomically read-modify-write control and status registers (CSRs), and all other potentially privileged instructions.

5.2.10 NOP Instruction

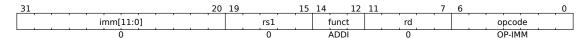


Figure 25: NOP Instructions

The NOP instruction does not change any architecturally visible state, except for advancing the pc and incrementing any applicable performance counters. NOP is encoded as **ADDI x0, x0, 0**.

5.3 M Extension: Multiplication Operations

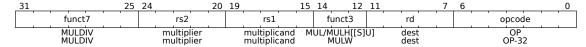


Figure 26: Multiplication Operations

Instruction	Description
MUL rd, rs1, rs2	Multiplication of rs1 by rs2 and places the lower 64-bits in the
	destination register.
MULH rd, rs1, rs2	Multiplication that return the upper 64-bits of the full 2×64-bit
	product.
MULHU rd, rs1, rs2	Unsigned multiplication that return the upper 64-bits of the full
	2×64-bit product.
MULHSU rd, rs1, rs2	Signed rs1 multiple unsigned rs2 that return the upper 64-bits of
	the full 2×64-bit product.
MULW rd, rs1, rs2	RV64 instruction that multiplies the lower 32 bits of the source
	registers, placing the sign-extension of the lower 32 bits of the
	result into the destination register.

Table 27: Multiplication Operation Description

Combining MUL and MULH together creates one multiplication operation.

5.3.1 Division Operations

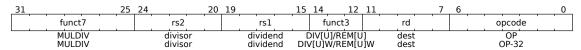


Figure 27: Division Operations

Instruction	Description
DIV rd, rs1, rs2	64-bits by 64-bits signed division of r1 by rs2 rounding towards
	zero.
DIVU rd, rs1, rs2	64-bits by 64-bits unsigned division of r1 by rs2 rounding
	towards zero.
REM rd, rs1, rs2	Remainder of the corresponding division.
REMU rd, rs1, rs2	Unsigned remainder of the corresponding division.
DIVW rd, rs1, rs2	RV64 instruction. Signed divide the lower 32 bits of rs1 by the
	lower 32 bits of rs2.
DIVUW rd, rs1, rs2	RV64 instruction. Unsigned divide the lower 32 bits of rs1 by the
	lower 32 bits of rs2.
REMW rd, rs1, rs2	Singed remainder.
REMUW rd, rs1, rs2	Unsigned remainder sign-extend the 32-bit result to 64 bits,
	including on a divide by zero.
MULDIV rd, rs1, rs	Multiply Divide.

Table 28: Division Operation Description

Combining DIV and REM together creates one division operation.

5.4 A Extension: Atomic Operations

Atomic operations are defined as operations that automatically read-modify-write memory to support synchronization between multiple RISC-V harts running in the same memory space.

5.4.1 Atomic Load-Reserve and Store-Conditional Instructions

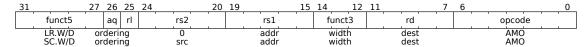


Figure 28: Atomic Operations

Instruction	Description
LR.W	Load Reserve.
	Loads a word from the address in rs1, places the sign-extended value in rd, and registers a reservation set—a set of bytes that subsumes the bytes in the addressed word.
SC.W	Store Conditional
	Conditionally writes a word in rs2 to the address in rs1: the SC.W succeeds only if the reservation is still valid and the reservation set contains the bytes being written. If the SC.W succeeds, the instruction writes the word in rs2 to memory, and it writes zero to rd. If the SC.W fails, the instruction does not write to memory, and it writes a nonzero value to rd. Executing an SC.W instruction invalidates any reservation held by this hart.
LR.D	RV64 - Loads doubleword.
SC.D	RV64 - Stores doubleword.

Table 29: Atomic Load-Reserve and Store-Conditional Instruction Description

For RV64, the sign-extended value of LR.W and SC.W is placed in rd.

Note

Only cores with data caches support the LR/SC instructions used by the A-Extension. Cores with DTIMs will *NOT*.

5.4.2 Atomic Memory Operations (AMOs)

The atomic memory operation (AMO) instructions perform read-modify-write operations for multiprocessor synchronization. These AMO instructions atomically load a data value from the address in rs1, place the value into register rd, apply a binary operator to the loaded value and the original value in rs2, then store the result back to the address in rs1.

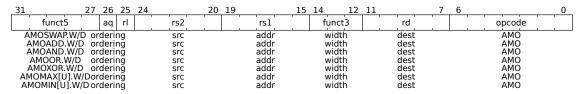


Figure 29: Atomic Memory Operations

Instruction	Description
AMOSWAPW/D	Word / doubleword swap.
AMOADD.W/D	Word / doubleword add.
AMOAND.W/D	Word / doubleword and.
AMOOR.W/D	Word / doubleword or.
AMOXOR.W/D	Word / doubleword xor.
AMOMIN.W/D	Word / doubleword minimum.
AMOMINU.W/D	Unsigned word / doubleword minimum.
AMOMAX.W/D	Word / doubleword maximum.
AMOMAXU.W/D	Unsigned word / doubleword maximum.

Table 30: Atomic Memory Operation Description

For RV64, 32-bit AMOs always sign-extend the value placed in rd.

5.5 F Extension: Single-Precision Floating-Point Instructions

The F Extension implements single-precision floating-point computational instructions compliant with the IEEE 754-2008 arithmetic standard. The F Extension adds 32 floating-point registers, f0-f31, each 32 bits wide, and a floating-point control and status register fcsr. Floating-point load and store instructions transfer floating-point values between registers and memory, and instructions to transfer values to and from the integer register file are also provided.

5.5.1 Floating-Point Control and Status Registers

Floating-Point Control and Status Register, fcsr, is a RISC-V control and status register (CSR). The register selects the dynamic rounding mode for floating-point arithmetic operations and holds the accrued exception flags.



Figure 30: Floating-Point Control and Status Register

Flag Mnemonic	Flag Meaning
NV	Invalid Operation
DZ	Divide by Zero
OF	Overflow
UF	Underflow
NX	Inexact

Table 31: Accrued Exception Flags

The fcsr register can be read and written with the FRCSR and FSCSR instructions. The FRRM instruction reads the Rounding Mode field frm. FSRM swaps the value in frm with an integer register. FRFLAGS and FSFLAGS are defined analogously for the Accrued Exception Flags field fflags.

5.5.2 Rounding Modes

Floating-point operations use either a static rounding mode encoded in the instruction, or a dynamic rounding mode held in frm. A value of 111 in the instruction's rm field selects the dynamic rounding mode held in frm. If frm is set to an invalid value (101–111), any subsequent attempt to execute a floating-point operation with a dynamic rounding mode will raise an illegal instruction exception. Some instructions, including widening conversions, have the rm field, but are nevertheless unaffected by the rounding mode. Software should set their rm field to RNE (000).

Mode	Mnemonic	Meaning
000	RNE	Round to Nearest, ties to Even.
001	RTZ	Round towards Zero.
010	RDN	Round Down (towards - ∞).
011	RUP	Round Up (towards + ∞).
100	RMM	Round to Nearest, ties to Max Magnitude.
101		Invalid. Reserved for future use.
110		Invalid. Reserved for future use.
111	DYN	In instruction's rm field, selects dynamic rounding mode; In Rounding
		Mode register, <i>Invalid</i> .

Table 32: Floating-Point Rounding Modes

5.5.3 Single-Precision Floating-Point Load and Store Instructions

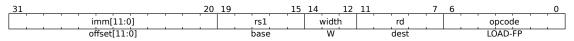


Figure 31: Single-Precision FP Load Instruction

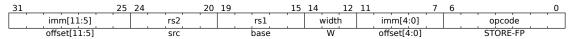


Figure 32: Single-Precision FP Store Instruction

Instruction	Operation	Description
FLW rd, rs1, imm	f[rd] = M[x[rs1] +	Loads a single-precision
	sext(offset)][31:0]	floating-point value from memory
		into floating-point register rd.
FSW imm, rs1, rs2	M[x[rs1] +	Stores a single-precision value
	sext(offset)] =	from floating-point register rs2 to
	f[rs2][31:0]	memory.

Table 33: Single-Precision FP Load and Store Instructions Description

5.5.4 Single-Precision Floating-Point Computational Instructions

31	27	26 25	24		20	19		15	14	12	11		7	6		0
funct5		fmt		rs2			rs1			rm		rd			opcode	
FADD/FSUB		Ś		src2			src1			RM		dest	-		OP-FP	
FMUL/FDIV		S		src2			src1			RM		dest	t		OP-FP	
FSQRT		S		0			src			RM		dest	t		OP-FP	
FMIN-MAX		S		src2			src1		MI	N/MAX		dest	t		OP-FP	

Figure 33: Single-Precision FP Computational Instructions

31		27 26 25	24		20	19		15	14	12	11		7	6		0
	rs3	fmt		rs2			rs1	.	rm			rd			pcode	
	src3	S		src2			src1		RM			dest		FINIMA	DD/FINIM	ISUB

Figure 34: Single-Precision FP Fused Computational Instructions

Instruction	Operation	Description
FADD.S rd, rs1, rs2	f[rd] = f[rs1] + f[rs2]	Single-precision floating-point addition.
FSUB.S rd, rs1, rs2	f[rd] = f[rs1] - f[rs2]	Single-precision floating-point subtraction.
FMUL.S rd, rs1, rs2	f[rd] = f[rs1] × f[rs2]	Single-precision floating-point multiplication.
FDIV.S rd, rs1, rs2	f[rd] = f[rs1] ÷ f[rs2]	Single-precision floating-point division.
FSQRT.S rd, rs1	f[rd] = √f[rs1]	Single-precision floating-point square root.
FMIN.S rd, rs1, rs2	f[rd] = min(f[rs1], f[rs2])	Single-precision floating-point minimum-number.
FMAX.S rd, rs1, rs2	f[rd] = max(f[rs1], f[rs2])	Single-precision floating-point maximum-number.
FMADD.S rd, rs1, rs2, rs3	f[rd] = (f[rs1] × f[rs2]) + f[rs3]	Single-precision floating-point multiply and add.
FMSUB.S rd, rs1, rs2, rs3	f[rd] = (f[rs1] × f[rs2]) - f[rs3]	Single-precision floating-point multiply and subtract.
FNMADD.S rd, rs1, rs2, rs3	f[rd]= -(f[rs1] × f[rs2]) + f[rs3]	Single-precision floating-point multiply, negate, and add.
FNMSUB.S rd, rs1, rs2, rs3	f[rd]= -(f[rs1] × f[rs2]) - f[rs3]	Single-precision floating-point multiply, negate, and subtract.

 Table 34:
 Single-Precision FP Computational Instructions Description

5.5.5 Single-Precision Floating-Point Conversion and Move Instructions

Single-Precision Floating-Point Conversion Instructions

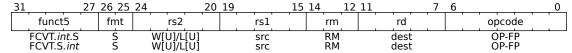


Figure 35: Single-Precision FP to Integer and Integer to FP Conversion Instructions

Instruction	Operation	Description
FCVT.W.S rd, rs1	x[rd] =	Converts a single-precision
	sext(s32 _{f32} (f[rs1]))	floating-point number to a signed
		32-bit integer. Sign-extends the
		32-bit result to the destination
		register width.
FCVT.S.W rd, rs1	f[rd] =	Converts a signed 32-bit integer to
	f32 _{s32} (x[rs1])	a single-precision floating-point
		number.
FCVT.WU.S rd, rs1	x[rd] =	Converts a single-precision
	sext(u32 _{f32} (f[rs1]))	floating-point number to an
		unsigned 32-bit integer.
		Sign-extends the 32-bit result to the
		destination register width.
FCVT.S.WU rd, rs1	f[rd] =	Converts an unsigned 32-bit
	f32 _{u32} (x[rs1])	integer to a single-precision
		floating-point number.
FCVT.L.S rd, rs1	x[rd] =	Converts a single-precision
	s64 _{f32} (f[rs1])	floating-point number to a signed
		64-bit integer.
FCVT.S.L rd, rs1	f[rd] =	Converts a signed 64-bit integer to
	f32 _{s64} (x[rs1])	a single-precision floating-point
		number.
FCVT.LU.S rd, rs1	x[rd] =	Converts a single-precision
	u64 _{f32} (f[rs1])	floating-point number to an
		unsigned 64-bit integer.
FCVT.S.LU rd, rs1	f[rd] =	Converts an unsigned 64-bit
	f32 _{u64} (x[rs1])	integer to a single-precision
		floating-point number.

Table 35: Single-Precision FP Conversion Instructions Description

If the rounded result is not representable in the destination format, it is clipped to the nearest value and the invalid flag is set.

Single-Precision Floating-Point-to-Floating-Point Sign-Injection Instructions

The floating-point-to-floating-point sign-injection instructions produce a result that takes all bits except the sign bit from rs1. The sign-injection instructions provide floating-point MV, ABS and NEG.

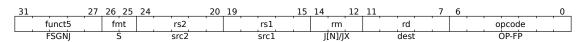


Figure 36: Single-Precision FP to FP Sign-Injection Instructions

Instruction	Operation	Description
FSGNJ.S rd, rs1, rs2	f[rd] = {f[rs2][31],	Produces a result that takes all bits
	f[rs1][30:0]}	except the sign bit from rs1. The
		result's sign bit is rs2's sign bit.
FSGNJN.S rd, rs1, rs2	$f[rd] = {\sim} f[rs2][31],$	Produces a result that takes all bits
	f[rs1][30:0]}	except the sign bit from rs1. The
		result's sign bit is the opposite of
		rs2's sign bit.
FSGNJX.S rd, rs1, rs2	f[rd] = {f[rs1][31] ^	Produces a result that takes all bits
	f[rs2][31],	except the sign bit from rs1. The
	f[rs1][30:0]}	sign bit is the XOR of the sign bits
		of rs1 and rs2.

Table 36: Single-Precision FP to FP Sign-Injection Instructions Description

ISA Base Instruction	Pseudoinstruction	Description
FSGNJ.S rx, ry, ry	FMV.S rx, ry	Moves ry to rx.
FSGNJN.S rx, ry, ry	FNEG.S rx, ry	Moves the negation of ry to rx.
FSGNJX.S rx, ry, ry	FABS.S rx, ry	Moves the absolute value of ry to rx.

 Table 37:
 RISC-V Base Instruction to Assembly Pseudoinstruction Example

Single-Precision Floating-Point Move Instructions

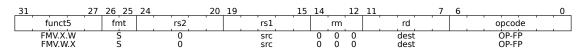


Figure 37: Single-Precision FP Move Instructions

Instruction	Operation	Description
FMV.X.W rd, rs1	x[rd] =	Moves the single-precision value in
	sext(f[rs1][31:0])	floating-point register rs1
		represented in IEEE 754-2008
		encoding to the lower 32 bits of
		integer register rd. The higher 32
		bits of the destination register are
		filled with copies of the
		floating-point number's sign bit.
FMV.W.X rd, rs1	f[rd] = x[rs1][31:0]	Moves the single-precision value
		encoded in IEEE 754-2008
		standard encoding from the lower
		32 bits of integer register rs1 to the
		floating-point register rd.

 Table 38:
 Single-Precision FP Move Instructions Description

5.5.6 Single-Precision Floating-Point Compare Instructions

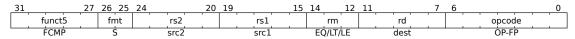


Figure 38: Single-Precision FP Compare Instructions

Instruction	Operation	Description
FEQ.S rd, rs1, rs2	x[rd] = f[rs1] == f[rs2]	Writes 1 to the integer register rd if rs1 is equal to rs2, 0 otherwise. Performs a quiet comparison; only sets the invalid operation exception flag if either input is a signaling NaN.
FLT.S rd, rs1, rs2	x[rd] = f[rs1] < f[rs2]	Writes 1 to the integer register rd if rs1 less then rs2, 0 otherwise. Performs signaling comparisons; sets the invalid operation exception flag if either input is NaN.
FLE.S rd, rs1, rs2	x[rd] = f[rs1] ≤ f[rs2]	Writes 1 to the integer register rd if rs1 less than or equal to rs2, 0 otherwise. Performs signaling comparisons; sets the invalid operation exception flag if either input is NaN.

Table 39: Single-Precision FP Compare Instructions Description

Single-Precision Floating-Point Classify Instruction

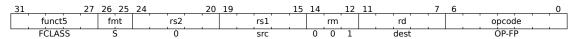


Figure 39: Single-Precision FP Classify Instruction

Instruction	Operation	Description
FCLASS.S rd, rs1	x[rd] = classify _s (f[rs1])	Examines the value in floating-point register rs1 and writes to integer register rd a 10-bit mask that indicates the class of the floating-point number.

Table 40: Single-Precision FP Classify Instruction Description

rd bit	Meaning	
0	rs1 is -∞	
1	rs1 is negative normal number	
2	rs1 is a negative subnormal number	
3	rs1 is -0	
4	rs1 is +0	
5	rs1 is a positive subnormal number	
6	rs1 is a positive normal number	
7	rs1 is +∞	
8	rs1 is a signaling NaN	
9	rs1 is a quiet NaN	

Table 41: Floating-Point Number Classes

5.6 D Extension: Double-Precision Floating-Point Instructions

The D extension widens the 32 floating-point registers, f0-f31, to 64 bits. The f registers can now hold either 32-bit or 64-bit floating-point values. When multiple floating-point precisions are supported, then valid values of narrower n-bit types, n < FLEN, are represented in the lower n bits of an FLEN-bit. Any operation that writes a narrower result to an f register must write all 1s to the uppermost FLEN-n bits to yield a legal NaN-boxed value. Floating-point n-bit transfer operations move external values held in IEEE standard formats into and out of the f registers, and comprise floating-point loads and stores and floating-point move instructions.

5.6.1 Double-Precision Floating-Point Load and Store Instructions

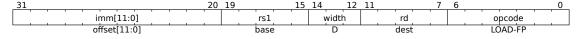


Figure 40: Double-Precision FP Load Instruction

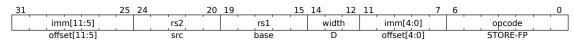


Figure 41: Double-Precision FP Store Instruction

Instruction	Operation	Description
FLD rd, rs1, imm	f[rd] = M[x[rs1] +	Loads a double-precision
	sext(offset)][63:0]	floating-point value from memory
		into floating-point register rd.
FSD imm, rs1, rs2	M[x[rs1] +	Stores a double-precision value
	sext(offset)] =	from the floating-point register rs2
	f[rs2][63:0]	to memory.

Table 42: Double-Precision FP Load and Store Instructions Description

FLD and FSD are only guaranteed to execute atomically if the effective address is naturally aligned and XLEN≥64. These instructions do not modify the bits being transferred; in particular, the payloads of non-canonical NaNs are preserved.

5.6.2 Double-Precision Floating-Point Computational Instructions

The double-precision floating-point computational instructions are defined analogously to their single-precision counterparts, but operate on double-precision operands and produce double-precision results.

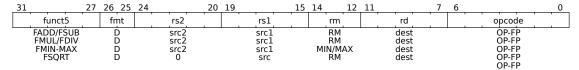


Figure 42: Double-Precision FP Computational Instructions

31		27	26 25	24		20	19		15	14	12	11		7	6		0
	rs3		fmt		rs2			rs1			rm		rd			opcode	
	src3		Ď		src2			src1			RM	-	des	t	•	F[N]MADD/F[N]]MSUB

Figure 43: Double-Precision FP Fused Computational Instructions

Instruction	Operation	Description
FADD.D rd, rs1, rs2	f[rd] = f[rs1] +	Double-precision floating-point
	f[rs2]	addition.
FSUB.D rd, rs1, rs2	f[rd] = f[rs1] -	Double-precision floating-point
	f[rs2]	subtraction.
FMUL.D rd, rs1, rs2	f[rd] = f[rs1] ×	Double-precision floating-point
	f[rs2]	multiplication.
FDIV.D rd, rs1, rs2	f[rd] = f[rs1] ÷	Double-precision floating-point
	f[rs2]	division.
FSQRT.D rd, rs1	$f[rd] = \sqrt{f[rs1]}$	Double-precision floating-point
		square root.
FMIN.D rd, rs1, rs2	f[rd] = min(f[rs1],	Double-precision floating-point
	f[rs2])	minimum-number.
FMAX.D rd, rs1, rs2	f[rd] = max(f[rs1],	Double-precision floating-point
	f[rs2])	maximum-number.
FMADD.D rd, rs1, rs2, rs3	$f[rd] = (f[rs1] \times$	Double-precision floating-point
	f[rs2]) + f[rs3]	multiply and add.
FMSUB.D rd, rs1, rs2, rs3	f[rd] = (f[rs1] ×	Double-precision floating-point
	f[rs2]) - f[rs3]	multiply and subtract.
FNMADD.D rd, rs1, rs2, rs3	$f[rd] = -(f[rs1] \times$	Double-precision floating-point
	f[rs2]) + f[rs3]	multiply, negate, and add.
FNMSUB.D rd, rs1, rs2, rs3	f[rd] = -(f[rs1] ×	Double-precision floating-point
	f[rs2]) - f[rs3]	multiply, negate, and subtract.

Table 43: Double-Precision FP Computational Instructions Description

5.6.3 Double-Precision Floating-Point Conversion and Move Instructions

Double-Precision Floating-Point Conversion Instructions

All floating-point to integer and integer to floating-point conversion instructions round according to the rm field.

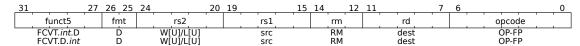


Figure 44: Double-Precision FP to Integer and Integer to FP Conversion Instructions

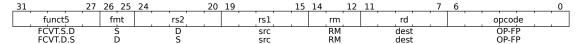


Figure 45: Double-Precision to Single-Precision and Single-Precision to Double-Precision FP Conversion Instructions

Instruction	Operation	Description
FCVT.W.D rd, rs1	x[rd] =	Converts a double-precision
	sext(s32 _{f64} (f[rs1]))	floating-point number to a signed
		32-bit integer. Sign-extends the
		32-bit result to the destination
		register width.
FCVT.D.W rd, rs1	f[rd] =	Converts a signed 32-bit integer to
	f64 _{s32} (x[rs1])	a double-precision floating-point
		number. Always produces an exact
		result and is unaffected by rounding
		mode.
FCVT.WU.D rd, rs1	x[rd] =	Converts a double precision
	sext(u32 _{f64} (f[rs1]))	floating-point number to an
		unsigned 32-bit integer.
		Sign-extends the 32-bit result to the
		destination register width.
FCVT.D.WU rd, rs1	f[rd] =	Converts an unsigned 32-bit
	f64 _{u32} (x[rs1])	integer to a double-precision
		floating-point number. Always
		produces an exact result and is
		unaffected by rounding mode.
FCVT.L.D rd, rs1	x[rd] =	Converts a double-precision
	s64 _{f64} (f[rs1])	floating-point number to a signed
		64-bit integer.
FCVT.D.L rd, rs1	f[rd] =	Converts a signed 64-bit integer to
	f64 _{s64} (x[rs1])	a double-precision floating-point
		number.
FCVT.LU.D rd, rs1	x[rd] =	Converts a double-precision
	u64 _{f64} (f[rs1])	floating-point number to an
		unsigned 64-bit integer.
FCVT.D.LU rd, rs1	f[rd] =	Converts an unsigned 64-bit
	f64 _{u64} (x[rs1])	integer to a double-precision
		floating-point number.
FCVT.S.D rd, rs1	f[rd] =	Converts a double-precision
	f32 _{f64} (f[rs1])	floating-point number to a
		single-precision floating-point
		number.
FCVT.D.S rd, rs1	f[rd] =	Converts a single-precision
	f64 _{f32} (f[rs1])	floating-point number to a
		double-precision floating-point
		number.

 Table 44:
 Double-Precision FP Conversion Instructions Description

Double-Precision Floating-Point-to-Floating-Point Sign-Injection Instructions



Figure 46: Double-Precision FP to FP Sign-Injection Instructions

Instruction	Operation	Description	
FSGNJ.D rd, rs1, rs2	f[rd] = {f[rs2][63],	Produces a result that takes all bits	
	f[rs1][62:0]}	except the sign bit from rs1. The	
		result's sign bit is rs2's sign bit.	
FSGNJN.D rd, rs1, rs2	f[rd] = {~f[rs2][63],	Produces a result that takes all bits	
	f[rs1][62:0]}	except the sign bit from rs1. The	
		result's sign bit is the opposite of	
		rs2's sign bit.	
FSGNJX.D rd, rs1, rs2	f[rd] = {f[rs1][63] ^	Produces a result that takes all bits	
	f[rs2][63],	except the sign bit from rs1. The	
	f[rs1][62:0]}	sign bit is the XOR of the sign bits	
		of rs1 and rs2.	

Table 45: Double-Precision FP to FP Sign-Injection Instructions Description

ISA Base Instruction	Pseudoinstruction	Description
FSGNJ.D rx, ry, ry	FMV.D rx, ry	Moves ry to rx.
FSGNJN.D rx, ry, ry	FNEG.D rx, ry	Moves the negation of ry to rx.
FSGNJX.D rx, ry, ry	FABS.D rx, ry	Moves the absolute value of ry to rx.

Table 46: RISC-V Base Instruction to Assembly Pseudoinstruction Example

Double-Precision Floating-Point Move Instructions

The RV64 architecture provides instructions to move bit patterns between the floating-point and integer registers.

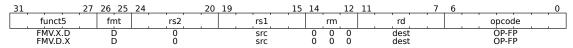


Figure 47: Double-Precision FP Move Instructions

Instruction	Operation	Description
FMV.X.D rd, rs1	x[rd] = f[rs1][63:0]	Moves the double-precision value in floating-point register rs1 to a representation in IEEE 754-2008 standard encoding in integer register rd.
FMV.D.X rd, rs1	f[rd] = x[rs1][63:0]	Moves the double-precision value encoded in IEEE 754-2008 standard encoding from the integer register rs1 to the floating-point register rd.

Table 47: Double-Precision FP Move Instructions Description

FMV.X.D and FMV.D.X do not modify the bits being transferred; in particular, the payloads of non-canonical NaNs are preserved.

5.6.4 Double-Precision Floating-Point Compare Instructions

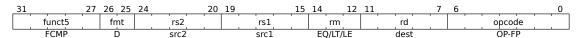


Figure 48: Double-Precision FP Compare Instructions

Instruction	Operation	Description
FEQ.D rd, rs1, rs2	x[rd] = f[rs1] == f[rs2]	Writes 1 to the integer register rd if rs1 is equal to rs2, 0 otherwise.
		Performs a quiet comparison; only sets the invalid operation exception flag if either input is a signaling NaN.
FLT.D rd, rs1, rs2	x[rd] = f[rs1] < f[rs2]	Writes 1 to the integer register rd if rs1 less than rs2, 0 otherwise. Performs signaling comparisons; sets the invalid operation exception flag if either input is NaN.
FLE.D rd, rs1, rs2	x[rd] = f[rs1] ≤ f[rs2]	Writes 1 to the integer register rd if rs1 less than or equal to rs2, 0 otherwise. Performs signaling comparisons; sets the invalid operation exception flag if either input is NaN.

Table 48: Double-Precision FP Compare Instructions Description

5.6.5 Double-Precision Floating-Point Classify Instruction

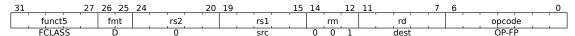


Figure 49: Double-Precision FP Classify Instruction

Instruction	Operation	Description
FCLASS.D rd, rs1	<pre>x[rd] = classifyd(f[rs1])</pre>	Examines the value in floating-point register rs1 and writes to integer register rd a 10-bit mask that indicates the class of the floating-point number.

Table 49: Double-Precision FP Classify Instruction Description

5.7 C Extension: Compressed Instructions

The C Extension reduces static and dynamic code size by adding short 16-bit instruction encodings for common operations. The C extension can be added to any of the base ISAs (RV32, RV64, RV128), and we use the generic term "RVC" to cover any of these. Typically, 50%–60% of the RISC-V instructions in a program can be replaced with RVC instructions, resulting in a 25%–30% code-size reduction. The C extension is compatible with all other standard instruction extensions. The C extension allows 16-bit instructions to be freely intermixed with 32-bit instructions, with the latter now able to start on any 16-bit boundary, i.e., IALIGN=16. With the addition of the C extension, no instructions can raise instruction-address-misaligned exceptions. It is important to note that the C extension is not designed to be a stand-alone ISA, and is meant to be used alongside a base ISA. The compressed 16-bit instruction format is designed around the assumption that x1 is the return address register and x2 is the stack pointer.

5.7.1 Compressed 16-bit Instruction Formats

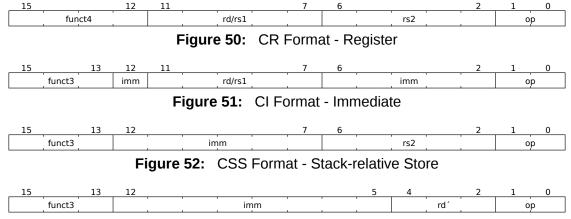


Figure 53: CIW Format - Wide Immediate

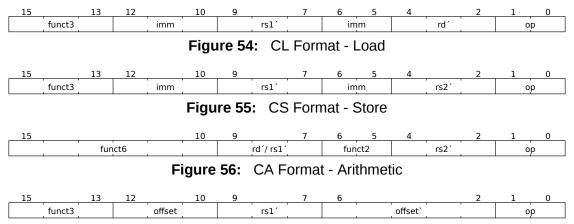


Figure 57: CJ Format - Jump

5.7.2 Stack-Pointed-Based Loads and Stores

The compressed load instructions are expressed in CI format.

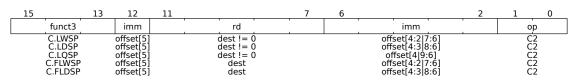


Figure 58: Stack-Pointed-Based Loads

Instruction	Description
C.LWSP	Loads a 32-bit value from memory into register rd.
C.LDSP	RV64C Instruction which loads a 64-bit value from memory into register rd.
C.LQSP	RV128C loads a 128-bit value from memory into register rd.
C.FLWSP	RV32FC Instruction that loads a single-precision floating-point value from memory into floating-point register rd.
C.FLDSP	RV32DC/RV64DC Instruction that loads a double-precision floating-point value from memory into floating-point register rd.

Table 50: Stack-Pointed-Based Load Instruction Description

The compressed store instructions are expressed in CSS format.

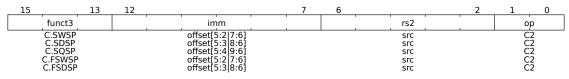


Figure 59: Stack-Pointed-Based Stores

Instruction	Description
C.LWSP	Loads a 32-bit value from memory into register rd.
C.SWSP	Stores a 32-bit value in register rs2 to memory.
C.SDSP	RV64C/RV128C instruction that stores a 64-bit value in register
	rs2 to memory.
C.SQSP	RV128C instruction that stores a 128-bit value in register rs2 to
	memory.
C.FSWSP	RV32FC instruction that stores a single-precision floating-point
	value in floating-point register rs2 to memory.
C.FSDSP	RV32DC/RV64DC instruction that stores a double-precision
	floating-point value in floating-point register rs2 to memory.

Table 51: Stack-Pointed-Based Store Instruction Description

5.7.3 Register-Based Loads and Stores

The compressed register-based load instructions are expressed in CL format.

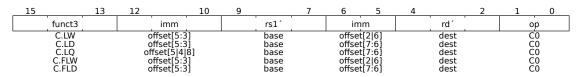


Figure 60: Register-Based Loads

Instruction	Description
C.LW	Loads a 32-bit value from memory into register rd.
C.LD	RV64C/RV128C-only instruction that loads a 64-bit value from
	memory into register rd.
C.LQ	RV128C-only instruction that loads a 128-bit value from memory
	into register rd.
C.FLW	RV32FC-only instruction that loads a single-precision
	floating-point value from memory into floating-point register rd.
C.FLD	RV32DC/RV64DC-only instruction that loads a double-precision
	floating-point value from memory into floating-point register rd.

Table 52: Register-Based Load Instruction Description

The compressed register-based store instructions are expressed in CS format.

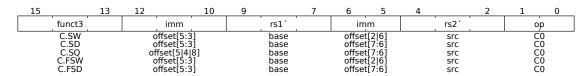


Figure 61: Register-Based Stores

Instruction	Description
C.SW	Stores a 32-bit value in register rs2 to memory.
C.SD	RV64C/RV128C instruction that stores a 64-bit value in register
	rs2 to memory.
C.SQ	RV128C instruction that stores a 128-bit value in register rs2 to
	memory.
C.FSW	RV32FC instruction that stores a single-precision floating-point
	value in floating-point register rs2 to memory.
C.FSD	RV32DC/RV64DC instruction that stores a double-precision
	floating-point value in floating-point register rs2 to memory.

Table 53: Register-Based Store Instruction Description

5.7.4 Control Transfer Instructions

RVC provides unconditional jump instructions and conditional branch instructions.

The unconditional jump instructions are expressed in CJ format.



Figure 62: Unconditional Jump Instructions

Instruction	Description
C.J	Unconditional control transfer.
C.JAL	RV32C instruction that performs the same operation as C.J, but
	additionally writes the address of the instruction following the
	jump (pc+2) to the link register, x1.

Table 54: Unconditional Jump Instruction Description

The unconditional control transfer instructions are expressed in CR format.

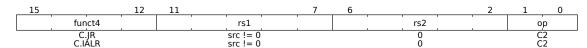


Figure 63: Unconditional Control Transfer Instructions

Instruction	Description
C.JR	Performs an unconditional control transfer to the address in
	register rs1.
C.JALR	Performs the same operation as C.JR, but additionally writes the
	address of the instruction following the jump (pc+2) to the link
	register, x1.

Table 55: Unconditional Control Transfer Instruction Description

The conditional control transfer instructions are expressed in CB format.

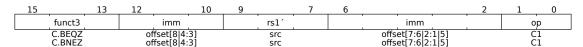


Figure 64: Conditional Control Transfer Instructions

Instruction	Description
C.BEQZ	Conditional control transfers. Takes the branch if the value in register rs1' is zero.
C.BNEZ	Conditional control transfers. Takes the branch if rs1' contains a nonzero value.

 Table 56:
 Conditional Control Transfer Instruction Description

5.7.5 Integer Computational Instructions

Integer Constant-Generation Instructions

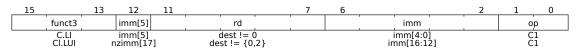


Figure 65: Integer Constant-Generation Instructions

Instruction	Description
C.LI	Loads the sign-extended 6-bit immediate, imm, into register rd.
C.LUI	Loads the non-zero 6-bit immediate field into bits 17–12 of the
	destination register, clears the bottom 12 bits, and sign-extends
	bit 17 into all higher bits of the destination

Table 57: Integer Constant-Generation Instruction Description

Integer Register-Immediate Operations

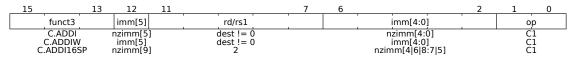


Figure 66: Integer Register-Immediate Operations

Instruction	Description
C.ADDI	Adds the non-zero sign-extended 6-bit immediate to the value in register rd then writes the result to rd.
C.ADDIW	RV64C/RV128C instruction that performs the same computation
	but produces a 32-bit result, then sign-extends result to 64 bits.
C.ADDI16SP	Adds the non-zero sign-extended 6-bit immediate to the value in the stack pointer (sp=x2), where the immediate is scaled to represent multiples of 16 in the range (-512,496). C.ADDI16SP is used to adjust the stack pointer in procedure prologues and epilogues.

Table 58: Integer Register-Immediate Operation Description

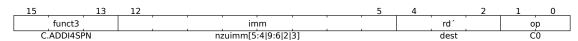


Figure 67: Integer Register-Immediate Operations (cont.)

Instruction	Description
C.ADDI4SPN	Adds a zero-extended non-zero immediate, scaled by 4, to the
	stack pointer, x2, and writes the result to rd'.

Table 59: Integer Register-Immediate Operation Description (cont.)

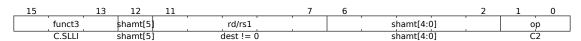


Figure 68: Integer Register-Immediate Operations (cont.)

Instruction	Description
C.SLLI	Performs a logical left shift of the value in register rd then writes
	the result to rd. The shift amount is encoded in the shamt field.

Table 60: Integer Register-Immediate Operation Description (cont.)

15		13	12	11	10	9		7	6				2	1	0
	funct3		shamt[5]	fur	ict2		rd′/rs1′			s	hamt[4:0	[]		0	р
	C.SRLI		shamt[5]	C.S	RLI		dest				hamt[4:0			C	1

Figure 69: Integer Register-Immediate Operations (cont.)

Instruction	Description
C.SRLI	Logical right shift of the value in register rd' then writes the
	result to rd'. The shift amount is encoded in the shamt field.
C.SRAI	Arithmetic right shift of the value in register rd' then writes the
	result to rd'. The shift amount is encoded in the shamt field.

Table 61: Integer Register-Immediate Operation Description (cont.)

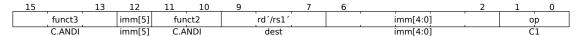


Figure 70: Integer Register-Immediate Operations (cont.)

Instruction	Description
C.ANDI	Computes the bitwise AND of the value in register rd' and the
	sign-extended 6-bit immediate, then writes the result to rd'.

Table 62: Integer Register-Immediate Operation Description (cont.)

Integer Register-Register Operations

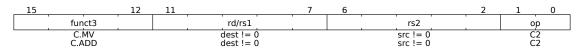


Figure 71: Integer Register-Register Operations

Instruction	Description
C.MV	Copies the value in register rs2 into register rd.
C.ADD	Adds the values in registers rd and rs2 and writes the result to register rd.

Table 63: Integer Register-Register Operation Description

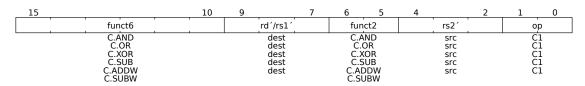


Figure 72: Integer Register-Register Operations (cont.)

Instruction	Description
C.AND	Computes the bitwise AND of the values in registers rd' and rs2'.
C.OR	Computes the bitwise OR of the values in registers rd' and rs2'.
C.XOR	Computes the bitwise XOR of the values in registers rd' and r2'.
C.SUB	Subtracts the value in register rs2' from the value in register rd'.
C.ADDW	RV64C/RV128C-only instruction that adds the values in registers rd' and rs2', then sign-extends the lower 32 bits of the sum before writing the result to register rd.
C.SUBW	RV64C/RV128C-only instruction that subtracts the value in register rs2' from the value in register rd', then sign-extends the lower 32 bits of the difference before writing the result to register rd.

Table 64: Integer Register-Register Operation Description (cont.)

Defined Illegal Instruction

A 16-bit instruction with all bits zero is permanently reserved as an illegal instruction.

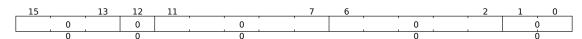


Figure 73: Defined Illegal Instruction

5.8 Zba Extension: Address Calculation Instructions

The Zba instructions are used to accelerate the generation of addresses that index into arrays of basic types (halfword, word, doubleword) using both unsigned word-sized and 64-sized indices; that is, a shifted index is added to a base address.

5.8.1 Address Calculation Instructions

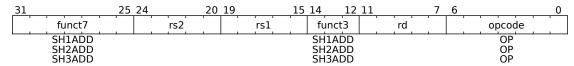


Figure 74: Address Calculation Instructions

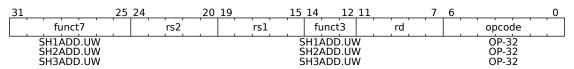


Figure 75: Address Calculation Instructions (cont.)

Instruction	Description			
SH1ADD rd, rs1, rs2	Shifts rs1 by 1 bit, then adds the result to rs2			
SH2ADD rd, rs1, rs2	Shifts rs1 by 2 bits, then adds the result to rs2			
SH3ADD rd, rs1, rs2	Shifts rs1 by 3 bits, then adds the result to rs2			
SH1ADD.UW rd, rs1, rs2	Performs an 64-wide addition of rs2, and the unsigned value			
	formed by extracting the least-significant word of rs1 and			
	shifting it left by 1 bit			
SH2ADD.UW rd, rs1, rs2	Performs an 64-wide addition of rs2, and the unsigned value			
	formed by extracting the least-significant word of rs1 and			
	shifting it left by 2 bits			
SH3ADD.UW rd, rs1, rs2	Performs an 64-wide addition of rs2, and the unsigned value			
	formed by extracting the least-significant word of rs1 and			
	shifting it left by 3 bits			

Table 65: Address Calculation Instructions Description

5.8.2 Add/Shift with Prefix Zero-Extend Instructions

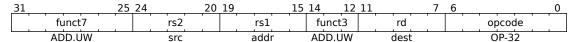


Figure 76: Add with Prefix Zero-Extend Instruction

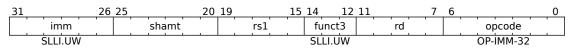


Figure 77: Shift with Prefix Zero-Extend Instruction

Instruction	Description	
ADD.UW rd, rs1, rs2	Performs a 64-wide addition between rs2 and the	
	zero-extended least-significant word of rs1	
SLLI.UW rd, rs1, shamt	Takes the least-significant word of rs1, zero-extends it, and	
	shifts it left by the immediate	

 Table 66:
 Add/Shift with Prefix Zero-Extend Instructions Description

5.9 Zbb Extension: Basic Bit Manipulation Instructions

The Zbb instructions are used for basic bit manipulation.

5.9.1 Count Leading/Trailing Zeroes Instructions

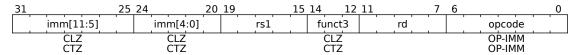


Figure 78: Count Leading/Trailing Zeroes Instructions

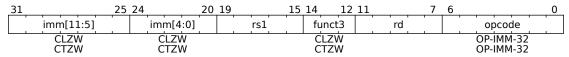


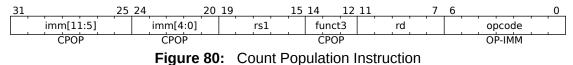
Figure 79: Count Leading/Trailing Zeroes Instructions (cont.)

Instruction	Description
CLZ rd, rs	Counts the number of 0 bits before the first 1 bit, starting at the most-significant bit and progressing to bit 0. If the input is 0, the output is 64. If the most-significant bit of the input is 1, the output is 0.
CTZ rd, rs	Counts the number of 0 bits before the first 1 bit, starting at the least-significant bit and progressing to the most-significant bit. If the input is 0, the output is 64. If the least-significant bit of the input is 1, the output is 0.
CLZW rd, rs	Counts the number of 0 bits before the first 1 bit, starting at bit 31 and progressing to bit 0. If the least-significant word is 0, the output is 32. If the most-significant bit of the word is 1, the output is 0.
CTZW rd, rs	Counts the number of 0 bits before the first 1 bit, starting at the least-significant bit and progressing to the most-significant word. If the least-significant word is 0, the output is 32. If the least-significant bit of the input is 1, the output is 0.

Table 67: Count Leading/Trailing Zeroes Instructions Description

Count Population Instructions 5.9.2

CPOPW



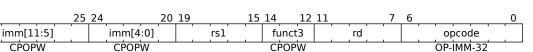


Figure 81: Count Population Instruction (cont.)

Instruction	Description
CPOP rd, rs	Counts the number of 1 bits in the source register
CPOPW rd, rs	Counts the number of 1 bits in the least-significant word of the source register

 Table 68:
 Count Population Instructions Description

Logic-With-Negate Instructions 5.9.3

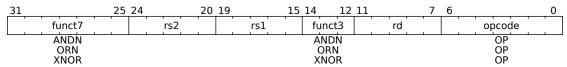


Figure 82: Logic-With-Negate Instructions

Instruction	Description
ANDN rd, rs1, rs2	Performs bitwise logical AND between rs1 and the bitwise
	inversion of rs2
ORN rd, rs1, rs2	Performs bitwise logical OR between rs1 and the bitwise
	inversion of rs2
XNOR rd, rs1, rs2	Performs bitwise exclusive-NOR on rs1 and rs2

Table 69: Logic-With-Negate Instructions Description

5.9.4 Comparison Instructions

These instructions are arithmetic R-type instructions that return the smaller or larger value of two operands.

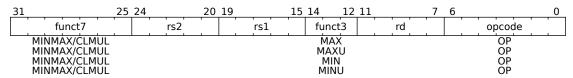


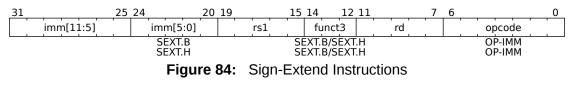
Figure 83: Comparison Instructions

Instruction	Description
MIN rd, rs1, rs2	Returns the smaller of two signed integers
MINU rd, rs1, rs2	Returns the smaller of two unsigned integers
MAX rd, rs1, rs2	Returns the larger of two signed integers
MAXU rd, rs1, rs2	Returns the larger of two unsigned integers

Table 70: Comparison Instructions Description

5.9.5 Sign-Extend and Zero-Extend Instructions

These instructions perform the sign-extension or zero-extension of the least-significant 8 or 16 bits of the source register.



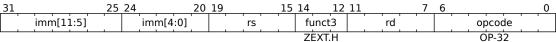


Figure 85: Zero-Extend Instruction

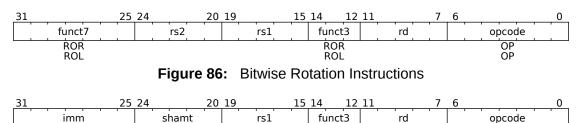
Instruction	Description
SEXT.B rd, rs	Sign-extends the least-significant byte in the source to 64 by copying the most-significant bit in the byte (i.e., bit 7) to all of the more-significant bits
SEXT.H rd, rs	Sign-extends the least-significant halfword in <i>rs</i> to 64 by copying the most-significant bit in the halfword (i.e., bit 15) to all of the more-significant bits
ZEXT.H rd, rs	Zero-extends the least-significant halfword of the source to 64 by inserting 0's into all of the bits more significant than 15

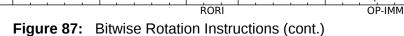
Table 71: Sign- and Zero-Extend Instructions

5.9.6 Bitwise Rotation Instructions

RORI

Bitwise rotation instructions are similar to the shift-logical operations from the base ISA specification. However, where the shift-logical instructions shift in zeros, the rotate instructions shift in the bits that were shifted out of the other side of the values.





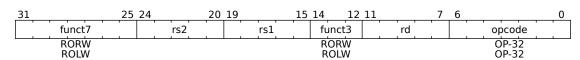


Figure 88: Bitwise Rotation Instructions (cont.)

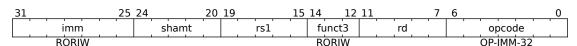


Figure 89: Bitwise Rotation Instructions (cont.)

Instruction	Description			
ROR rd, rs1, rs2	Performs a rotate right shift of rs1 by the amount in the			
	least-significant 6 bits of rs2			
ROL rd, rs1, rs2	Performs a rotate left shift of rs1 by the amount in the			
	least-significant 6 bits of rs2			
RORI rd, rs1, shamt	Performs a rotate right shift of rs1 by the amount in the least			
	significant 6 bits of shamt			
RORW rd, rs1, rs2	Performs a rotate right shift of the least-significant word of rs1			
	byt the amount in the least-significant 5 bits of rs2. The resulting			
	word value is sign-extended by copying bit 31 to all of the			
	more-significant bits.			
ROLW rd, rs1, rs2	Performs a rotate left shift on the least-significant word of rs1 by			
	the amount in the least-significant 5 bits of rs2. The resulting			
	word value is sign-extended by copying bit 31 to all of the			
	more-significant bits.			
RORIW rd, rs1, imm	Performs a rotate right shift on the least-significant word of rs1			
	by the amount in the least-significant 6 bits of shamt. The			
	resulting word value is sign-extended by copying bit 31 to all of			
	the more significant bits.			

Table 72: Bitwise Rotation Instructions Description

5.9.7 OR Combine Instruction

Instruction	Description
ORC.B rd, rs	Combines the bits within every byte through a reciprocal bitwise logical OR. This sets the bits of each byte in the result rd to all zeros if no bit within the respective byte of rs is set, otherwise it sets the bits to all ones if any bit within the respective byte of rs is set.

Table 73: OR Combine Instruction Description

5.9.8 Byte-Reverse Instruction

Instruction	Description		
REV8 rd, rs	Reverses the order of the bytes in a register		

Table 74: Byte-Reverse Instruction Description

5.10 Zicsr Extension: Control and Status Register Instructions

RISC-V defines a separate address space of 4096 Control and Status registers associated with each hart. The defined instructions access counter, timers and floating-point status registers.

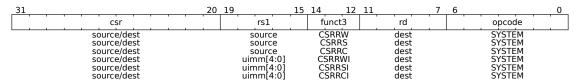


Figure 90: Zicsr Instructions

Instruction	Description
CSRRW rd, rs1 csr	Instruction atomically swaps values in the CSRs and integer registers.
CSRRS rd, rs1 csr	Instruction reads the value of the CSR, zero-extends the value to 64-bits, and writes it to integer register rd. The initial value in integer register rs1 is treated as a bit mask that specifies bit positions to be set in the CSR.
CSRRC rd, rs1 csr	Instruction reads the value of the CSR, zero-extends the value to 64-bits, and writes it to integer register rd. The initial value in integer register rs1 is treated as a bit mask that specifies bit positions to be cleared in the CSR.
CSRRWI rd, rs1 csr	Update the CSR using an 64-bit value obtained by zero-extending a 5-bit unsigned immediate (uimm[4:0]) field encoded in the rs1 field instead of a value from an integer register.
CSRRSI rd, rs1 csr	Update the CSR using an 64-bit value obtained by zero-extending a 5-bit unsigned immediate (uimm[4:0]) field encoded in the rs1 field instead of a value from an integer register.
CSRRCI rd, rs1 csr	If the uimm[4:0] field is zero, then these instructions will not write to the CSR.

Table 75: Control and Status Register Instruction Description

The CSRRWI, CSRRSI, and CSRRCI instructions are similar in kind to CSRRW, CSRRS, and CSRRC respectively, except in that they update the CSR using an 64-bit value obtained by zero-extending a 5-bit unsigned immediate (uimm[4:0]) field encoded in the rs1 field instead of a value from an integer register. For CSRRSI and CSRRCI, these instructions will not write to the CSR if the uimm[4:0] field is zero, and they shall not cause any of the size effects that might otherwise occur on a CSR write. For CSRRWI, if rd = x0, then the instruction shall not read the CSR and shall not cause any of the side effects that might occur on a CSR read. Both CSRRSI and CSRRCI will always read the CSR and cause any read side effects regardless of the rd and rs1 fields.

Table 76 shows if a CSR reads or writes given a particular CSR.

Register Operand						
Instruction	rd	rs1	read CSR?	write CSR?		
CSRRW	x0	-	no	yes		
CSRRW	!x0	-	yes	yes		
CSRRS/C	-	x0	yes	no		
CSRRS/C	-	! x0	yes	yes		
	Immediate Operand					
Instruction	Instruction rd uimm read CSR? write CSR?					
CSRRWI	x0	-	no	yes		
CSRRWI	!x0	-	yes	yes		
CSRRS/CI	-	0	yes	no		
CSRRS/CI	-	!0	yes	yes		

Table 76: CSR Reads and Writes

5.10.1 Control and Status Registers

The control and status registers (CSRs) are only accessible using variations of the CSRR (Read) and CSRRW (Write) instructions. Only the CPU executing the csr instruction can read or write these registers, and they are not visible by software outside of the core they reside on. The standard RISC-V ISA sets aside a 12-bit encoding space (csr[11:0]) for up to 4,096 CSRs. Attempts to access a non-existent CSR raise an illegal instruction exception. Attempts to access a CSR without appropriate privilege level or to write a read-only register also raise illegal instruction. A read/write register might also contain some bits that are read-only, in which case, writes to the read-only bits are ignored. Each core functionality has its own control and status registers which are described in the corresponding section.

5.10.2 Defined CSRs

The following tables describe the currently defined CSRs, categorized by privilege level. The usage of the CSRs below is implementation specific. CSRs are only accessible when operating within a specific access mode (user mode, debug mode, supervisor mode, or machine mode). Therefore, attempts to access a non-existent CSR raise an illegal instruction exception, and attempts to access a CSR without appropriate privilege level or to write a read-only register also raise illegal instruction exceptions.

Number	Privilege	Name	Description		
	User Trap Setup				
0×000	RW	ustatus	User status register.		
0x004	RW	uie	User interrupt-enable register.		
0x005	RW	utvec	User trap handler base address.		
		Us	er Trap Handling		
0x040	RW	uscratch	Scratch register for use trap handlers.		
0x041	RW	uepc	User exception program counter.		
0x042	RW	ucause	User trap cause.		
0x043	RW	ubadaddr	User bad address.		
0x044	RW	uip	User interrupt pending.		
	User Floating-Point CSRs				
0x001	RW	fflags	Floating-Point Accrued Exceptions.		
0x002	RW	frm	Floating-Point Dynamic Rounding Mode.		
0x003	RW	fcsr	Floating-Point Control and Status Register (frm +		
			fflags).		
		Use	er Counter/Timers		
0×C00	RO	cycle	Cycle counter for RDCYCLE instruction.		
0xC01	RO	time	Timer for RDTIME instruction.		
0xC02	RO	instret	Instructions-retired counter for RDINSTRET		
			instruction.		
0xC03	RO	hpmcounter3	Performance-monitoring counter.		
0xC04	RO	hpmcounter4	Performance-monitoring counter.		
0xC1F	RO	hpmcounter31	Performance-monitoring counter.		

Table 77: User Mode CSRs

Machine Information Registers	Number	Privilege	Name	Description	
0xF11 RO mvendorid Vendor ID. 0xF12 RO marchid Architecture ID. 0xF13 RO mimpid Implementation ID. 0xF14 RO mhartid Hardware thread ID. Machine Trap Setup 0x300 RW misa ISA and extensions. 0x301 RW misa ISA and extensions. 0x302 RW medeleg Machine exception delegation register. 0x303 RW mideleg Machine interrupt delegation register. 0x304 RW mideleg Machine interrupt delegation register. 0x305 RW mideleg Machine interrupt delegation register. 0x306 RW mideleg Machine interrupt delegation register. 0x307 RW mideleg Machine interrupt delegation register. 0x308 RW mideleg Machine interrupt delegation register. 0x341 RW mscratch Scratch register for machine trap handlers. 0x342 RW mcause Machine inter					
0xF13 RO mimpid Implementation ID. 0xF14 RO mhartid Hardware thread ID. Machine Trap Setup 0x300 RW mstatus Machine status register. 0x301 RW misa ISA and extensions. 0x302 RW medeleg Machine exception delegation register. 0x303 RW mideleg Machine interrupt delegation register. 0x304 RW mideleg Machine interrupt enable register. 0x305 RW mideleg Machine interrupt-enable register. 0x306 RW mcounteren Machine interrupt-enable register. 0x306 RW mcounteren Machine counter enable. Wachine Trap Handling Wachine Trap Handling Wachine Trap Handling Wachine Expected for machine trap handlers. Wachine Expected for machine trap	0xF11	RO		·	
Name	0xF12	RO	marchid	Architecture ID.	
Name		RO	mimpid	Implementation ID.	
0x300 RW mstatus Machine status register. 0x301 RW misa ISA and extensions. 0x302 RW medeleg Machine interrupt delegation register. 0x303 RW mideleg Machine interrupt delegation register. 0x304 RW mie Machine interrupt-enable register. 0x305 RW mtvec Machine trap-handler base address. 0x306 RW mcounteren Machine counter enable. Machine Trap Handling 0x340 RW mscratch Scratch register for machine trap handlers. 0x341 RW mepc Machine exception program counter. 0x342 RW mcause Machine trap cause. 0x341 RW mcause Machine bad address or instruction. 0x342 RW mtval Machine interrupt pending. 0x344 RW mppcfg0 Physical memory protection configuration. 0x340 RW pmpcfg0 Physical memory protection configuration, RV32 only. 0x341 RW	0xF14	RO	·	•	
0x300 RW mstatus Machine status register. 0x301 RW misa ISA and extensions. 0x302 RW medeleg Machine interrupt delegation register. 0x303 RW mideleg Machine interrupt delegation register. 0x304 RW mie Machine interrupt-enable register. 0x305 RW mtvec Machine trap-handler base address. 0x306 RW mcounteren Machine counter enable. Machine Trap Handling 0x340 RW mscratch Scratch register for machine trap handlers. 0x341 RW mepc Machine exception program counter. 0x342 RW mcause Machine trap cause. 0x341 RW mcause Machine bad address or instruction. 0x342 RW mtval Machine interrupt pending. 0x344 RW mppcfg0 Physical memory protection configuration. 0x340 RW pmpcfg0 Physical memory protection configuration, RV32 only. 0x341 RW			Mac	hine Trap Setup	
0x302 RW medeleg Machine exception delegation register. 0x303 RW mideleg Machine interrupt delegation register. 0x304 RW mie Machine interrupt-enable register. 0x305 RW mtvec Machine trap-handler base address. 0x306 RW mcounteren Machine counter enable. Machine Trap Handling 0x340 RW mscratch Scratch register for machine trap handlers. 0x341 RW mepc Machine exception program counter. 0x341 RW mepc Machine exception program counter. 0x342 RW macuse Machine trap cause. 0x343 RW mtval Machine exception program counter. 0x344 RW mip Machine exception program counter. 0x344 RW mip Machine interrupt pending. 0x344 RW mip Machine interrupt pending. 0x340 RW pmpcfg0 Physical memory protection configuration. 0x341 RW pmpcf	0×300	RW			
0x303 RW mideleg Machine interrupt delegation register. 0x304 RW mie Machine interrupt-enable register. 0x305 RW mtvec Machine trap-handler base address. 0x306 RW mcounteren Machine counter enable. Machine Trap Handling 0x340 RW mscratch Scratch register for machine trap handlers. 0x341 RW mepc Machine exception program counter. 0x342 RW mcause Machine trap cause. 0x341 RW mtval Machine bad address or instruction. 0x344 RW mip Machine interrupt pending. Machine Memory Protection 0x344 RW mip Machine interrupt pending. Machine Memory Protection 0x340 RW pmpcfg0 Physical memory protection configuration. 0x341 RW pmpcfg1 Physical memory protection configuration. 0x342 RW pmpcfg2 Physical memory protection address register. 0x345	0x301	RW	misa	ISA and extensions.	
0x304 RW mie Machine interrupt-enable register. 0x305 RW mtvec Machine trap-handler base address. 0x306 RW mcounteren Machine counter enable. Machine Trap Handling 0x340 RW mscratch Scratch register for machine trap handlers. 0x341 RW mepc Machine exception program counter. 0x342 RW mcause Machine trap cause. 0x343 RW mtva1 Machine bad address or instruction. 0x344 RW mip Machine interrupt pending. Machine Memory Protection 0x344 RW mppcfg0 Physical memory protection configuration. 0x340 RW pmpcfg0 Physical memory protection configuration, RV32 only. 0x341 RW pmpcfg1 Physical memory protection configuration, RV32 only. 0x342 RW pmpcfg2 Physical memory protection address register. 0x343 RW pmpaddr1 Physical memory protection address register. 0x345 RW p	0x302	RW	medeleg	Machine exception delegation register.	
0x305 RW mtvec Machine trap-handler base address. 0x306 RW mcounteren Machine counter enable. Machine Trap Handling 0x340 RW mscratch Scratch register for machine trap handlers. 0x341 RW mepc Machine exception program counter. 0x342 RW mcause Machine trap cause. 0x343 RW mtval Machine bad address or instruction. 0x344 RW mip Machine interrupt pending. Wachine Memory Protection 0x344 RW mpp Machine interrupt pending. Wachine Memory Protection 0x344 RW pmpcfg0 Physical memory protection configuration. 0x340 RW pmpcfg1 Physical memory protection configuration, RV32 only. 0x341 RW pmpcfg2 Physical memory protection address register. 0x342 RW pmpaddr0 Physical memory protection address register. 0x380 RW pmpaddr1 Physical memory protection address register. <td co<="" td=""><td>0x303</td><td>RW</td><td>mideleg</td><td>Machine interrupt delegation register.</td></td>	<td>0x303</td> <td>RW</td> <td>mideleg</td> <td>Machine interrupt delegation register.</td>	0x303	RW	mideleg	Machine interrupt delegation register.
0x306 RW mcounteren Machine Trap Handling 0x340 RW mscratch Scratch register for machine trap handlers. 0x341 RW mepc Machine exception program counter. 0x342 RW mcause Machine trap cause. 0x343 RW mtval Machine bad address or instruction. 0x344 RW mip Machine interrupt pending. Wachine Memory Protection 0x3A0 RW pmpcfg0 Physical memory protection configuration. 0x3A1 RW pmpcfg1 Physical memory protection configuration, RV32 only. 0x3A2 RW pmpcfg2 Physical memory protection configuration, RV32 only. 0x3B0 RW pmpaddr0 Physical memory protection address register. 0x3B1 RW pmpaddr1 Physical memory protection address register. Machine Counter/Timers 0x3B6 RW mcycle Machine eycle counter. 0xB02 RW minstret Machine instruction-retired counter. Machine Counter Setup	0x304	RW	mie	Machine interrupt-enable register.	
Machine Trap Handling	0x305	RW	mtvec	Machine trap-handler base address.	
0x340 RW mscratch Scratch register for machine trap handlers. 0x341 RW mepc Machine exception program counter. 0x342 RW mcause Machine trap cause. 0x343 RW mtval Machine bad address or instruction. 0x344 RW mip Machine interrupt pending. Machine Memory Protection 0x3A0 RW pmpcfg0 Physical memory protection configuration. 0x3A1 RW pmpcfg1 Physical memory protection configuration, RV32 only. 0x3A2 RW pmpcfg2 Physical memory protection configuration, RV32 only. 0x3B0 RW pmpaddr0 Physical memory protection address register. 0x3B1 RW pmpaddr1 Physical memory protection address register. 0x3BF RW pmpaddr15 Physical memory protection address register. 0xB00 RW mcycle Machine counter/Timers 0xB02 RW minstret Machine instruction-retired counter. 0x320 RW mcountinhibit Machine counter-inhibit	0x306	RW	mcounteren	Machine counter enable.	
0x341 RW mepc Machine exception program counter. 0x342 RW mcause Machine trap cause. 0x343 RW mtval Machine bad address or instruction. 0x344 RW mip Machine interrupt pending. Machine Memory Protection 0x3A0 RW pmpcfg0 Physical memory protection configuration. 0x3A1 RW pmpcfg1 Physical memory protection configuration. 0x3A2 RW pmpcfg2 Physical memory protection configuration, RV32 only. 0x3A3 RW pmpaddr0 Physical memory protection address register. 0x3B0 RW pmpaddr1 Physical memory protection address register. 0x3BF RW pmpaddr15 Physical memory protection address register. 0xB00 RW mcycle Machine Counter/Timers 0xB00 RW minstret Machine instruction-retired counter. 0x320 RW mcountinhibit Machine counter-inhibit register. 0x322 RW mhpmevent3 Machine performance-monitoring event selec		•	Mach	ine Trap Handling	
0x342 RW mcause Machine trap cause. 0x343 RW mtval Machine bad address or instruction. 0x344 RW mip Machine interrupt pending. Machine Memory Protection 0x3A0 RW pmpcfg0 Physical memory protection configuration. 0x3A1 RW pmpcfg1 Physical memory protection configuration. 0x3A2 RW pmpcfg2 Physical memory protection configuration. 0x3A3 RW pmpcfg3 Physical memory protection address register. 0x3B0 RW pmpaddr1 Physical memory protection address register. 0x3B1 RW pmpaddr1 Physical memory protection address register. 0x3BF RW pmpaddr15 Physical memory protection address register. Machine Counter/Timers 0x800 RW mcycle Machine cycle counter. 0x800 RW minstret Machine instruction-retired counter. 0x320 RW mcountinhibit Machine counter-inhibit register. 0x322 RW <	0x340	RW	mscratch	Scratch register for machine trap handlers.	
0x343 RW mtval Machine bad address or instruction. 0x344 RW mip Machine interrupt pending. Machine Memory Protection 0x3A0 RW pmpcfg0 Physical memory protection configuration. 0x3A1 RW pmpcfg1 Physical memory protection configuration, RV32 only. 0x3A2 RW pmpcfg2 Physical memory protection configuration, RV32 only. 0x3B0 RW pmpaddr0 Physical memory protection address register. 0x3B1 RW pmpaddr1 Physical memory protection address register. 0x3BF RW pmpaddr15 Physical memory protection address register. 0xB00 RW minstret Machine Counter/Timers 0xB00 RW minstret Machine instruction-retired counter. 0x320 RW minstret Machine counter-inhibit register. 0x323 RW mhpmevent3 Machine performance-monitoring event selector. 0x324 RW mhpmevent4 Machine performance-monitoring event selector. 0x33F RW mhpmevent31 </td <td>0x341</td> <td>RW</td> <td>терс</td> <td>Machine exception program counter.</td>	0x341	RW	терс	Machine exception program counter.	
Machine Memory Protection 0x3A0 RW pmpcfg0 Physical memory protection configuration. 0x3A1 RW pmpcfg1 Physical memory protection configuration, RV32 only. 0x3A2 RW pmpcfg2 Physical memory protection configuration. 0x3A3 RW pmpcfg3 Physical memory protection configuration, RV32 only. 0x3B0 RW pmpaddr0 Physical memory protection address register. 0x3B1 RW pmpaddr1 Physical memory protection address register. 0x3BF RW pmpaddr15 Physical memory protection address register. Machine Counter/Timers 0xB00 RW mcycle Machine cycle counter. 0xB02 RW minstret Machine instruction-retired counter. Machine Counter Setup 0x320 RW mcountinhibit Machine performance-monitoring event selector. 0x323 RW mhpmevent3 Machine performance-monitoring event selector. 0x324 RW mhpmevent31 Machine performance-monitoring event selector. Debug	0x342	RW	mcause	Machine trap cause.	
Machine Memory Protection	0x343	RW	mtval	Machine bad address or instruction.	
0x3A0 RW pmpcfg0 Physical memory protection configuration. 0x3A1 RW pmpcfg1 Physical memory protection configuration, RV32 only. 0x3A2 RW pmpcfg2 Physical memory protection configuration, RV32 only. 0x3B0 RW pmpaddr0 Physical memory protection address register. 0x3B1 RW pmpaddr1 Physical memory protection address register. 0x3BF RW pmpaddr15 Physical memory protection address register. 0xB00 RW mcycle Machine Counter/Timers 0xB02 RW minstret Machine instruction-retired counter. Machine Counter Setup 0x320 RW mcountinhibit Machine counter-inhibit register. 0x323 RW mhpmevent3 Machine performance-monitoring event selector. 0x324 RW mhpmevent4 Machine performance-monitoring event selector. 0x33F RW mhpmevent31 Machine performance-monitoring event selector. Debug/Trace Register (shared with Debug Mode)	0x344	RW	mip	Machine interrupt pending.	
0x3A1 RW pmpcfg1 Physical memory protection configuration, RV32 only. 0x3A2 RW pmpcfg2 Physical memory protection configuration, RV32 only. 0x3A3 RW pmpcfg3 Physical memory protection address register. 0x3B0 RW pmpaddr0 Physical memory protection address register. 0x3B1 RW pmpaddr1 Physical memory protection address register. 0x3BF RW pmpaddr15 Physical memory protection address register. Machine Counter/Timers 0xB00 RW mcycle Machine cycle counter. 0xB02 RW minstret Machine instruction-retired counter. Machine Counter Setup 0x320 RW mcountinhibit Machine counter-inhibit register. 0x323 RW mhpmevent3 Machine performance-monitoring event selector. 0x324 RW mhpmevent4 Machine performance-monitoring event selector. 0x33F RW mhpmevent31 Machine performance-monitoring event selector. Debug/Trace Register (shared with Debug Mode)			Machine	Memory Protection	
only. Ox3A2 RW pmpcfg2 Physical memory protection configuration. Ox3A3 RW pmpcfg3 Physical memory protection configuration, RV32 only. Ox3B0 RW pmpaddr0 Physical memory protection address register. Ox3B1 RW pmpaddr1 Physical memory protection address register. Ox3BF RW pmpaddr15 Physical memory protection address register. OxBO0 RW mcycle Machine cycle counter. OxBO2 RW minstret Machine instruction-retired counter. Ox320 RW mcountinhibit Machine counter-inhibit register. Ox323 RW mhpmevent3 Machine performance-monitoring event selector. Ox324 RW mhpmevent4 Machine performance-monitoring event selector. Ox33F RW mhpmevent31 Machine performance-monitoring event selector. Ox33F RW mhpmevent31 Machine performance-monitoring event selector. Ox40 Ox40	0x3A0	RW	pmpcfg0	Physical memory protection configuration.	
0x3A2 RW pmpcfg2 Physical memory protection configuration. 0x3A3 RW pmpcfg3 Physical memory protection configuration, RV32 only. 0x3B0 RW pmpaddr0 Physical memory protection address register. 0x3B1 RW pmpaddr1 Physical memory protection address register. 0x3BF RW pmpaddr15 Physical memory protection address register. Machine Counter/Timers 0x800 RW mcycle Machine cycle counter. 0x802 RW minstret Machine instruction-retired counter. Machine Counter Setup 0x320 RW mcountinhibit Machine counter-inhibit register. 0x323 RW mhpmevent3 Machine performance-monitoring event selector. 0x324 RW mhpmevent4 Machine performance-monitoring event selector. 0x33F RW mhpmevent31 Machine performance-monitoring event selector. Debug/Trace Register (shared with Debug Mode)	0x3A1	RW	pmpcfg1	l	
0x3A3 RW pmpcfg3 Physical memory protection configuration, RV32 only. 0x3B0 RW pmpaddr0 Physical memory protection address register. 0x3B1 RW pmpaddr1 Physical memory protection address register. Machine Counter/Timers 0xB00 RW mcycle Machine cycle counter. 0xB02 RW minstret Machine instruction-retired counter. Machine Counter Setup 0x320 RW mcountinhibit Machine counter-inhibit register. 0x323 RW mhpmevent3 Machine performance-monitoring event selector. 0x324 RW mhpmevent4 Machine performance-monitoring event selector. 0x33F RW mhpmevent31 Machine performance-monitoring event selector. Debug/Trace Register (shared with Debug Mode)	0x3A2	RW	pmpcfq2		
0x3B0 RW pmpaddr0 Physical memory protection address register. 0x3B1 RW pmpaddr1 Physical memory protection address register. 0x3BF RW pmpaddr15 Physical memory protection address register. Machine Counter/Timers 0xB00 RW mcycle Machine cycle counter. 0xB02 RW minstret Machine instruction-retired counter. Machine Counter Setup 0x320 RW mcountinhibit Machine counter-inhibit register. 0x323 RW mhpmevent3 Machine performance-monitoring event selector. 0x324 RW mhpmevent4 Machine performance-monitoring event selector. 0x33F RW mhpmevent31 Machine performance-monitoring event selector. Debug/Trace Register (shared with Debug Mode)	0x3A3	RW		Physical memory protection configuration, RV32	
0x3B1 RW pmpaddr1 Physical memory protection address register. 0x3BF RW pmpaddr15 Physical memory protection address register. Machine Counter/Timers 0xB00 RW mcycle Machine cycle counter. 0xB02 RW minstret Machine instruction-retired counter. Machine Counter Setup 0x320 RW mcountinhibit Machine counter-inhibit register. 0x323 RW mhpmevent3 Machine performance-monitoring event selector. 0x324 RW mhpmevent4 Machine performance-monitoring event selector. 0x33F RW mhpmevent31 Machine performance-monitoring event selector. Debug/Trace Register (shared with Debug Mode)	0x3B0	RW	pmpaddr0		
0x3BF RW pmpaddr15 Physical memory protection address register. Machine Counter/Timers 0xB00 RW mcycle Machine cycle counter. 0xB02 RW minstret Machine instruction-retired counter. Machine Counter Setup 0x320 RW mcountinhibit Machine counter-inhibit register. 0x323 RW mhpmevent3 Machine performance-monitoring event selector. 0x324 RW mhpmevent4 Machine performance-monitoring event selector. 0x33F RW mhpmevent31 Machine performance-monitoring event selector. Debug/Trace Register (shared with Debug Mode)		RW	•	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	
Machine Counter/Timers 0xB00 RW mcycle Machine cycle counter. 0xB02 RW minstret Machine instruction-retired counter.				, , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , ,	
0xB00 RW mcycle Machine cycle counter. 0xB02 RW minstret Machine instruction-retired counter. Machine Counter Setup 0x320 RW mcountinhibit Machine counter-inhibit register. 0x323 RW mhpmevent3 Machine performance-monitoring event selector. 0x324 RW mhpmevent4 Machine performance-monitoring event selector. 0x33F RW mhpmevent31 Machine performance-monitoring event selector. Debug/Trace Register (shared with Debug Mode)	0x3BF	RW	pmpaddr15	Physical memory protection address register.	
0xB02 RW minstret Machine instruction-retired counter. Machine Counter Setup 0x320 RW mcountinhibit Machine counter-inhibit register. 0x323 RW mhpmevent3 Machine performance-monitoring event selector. 0x324 RW mhpmevent4 Machine performance-monitoring event selector. 0x33F RW mhpmevent31 Machine performance-monitoring event selector. Debug/Trace Register (shared with Debug Mode)		•	Machi	ne Counter/Timers	
Machine Counter Setup 0x320 RW mcountinhibit Machine counter-inhibit register. 0x323 RW mhpmevent3 Machine performance-monitoring event selector. 0x324 RW mhpmevent4 Machine performance-monitoring event selector. 0x33F RW mhpmevent31 Machine performance-monitoring event selector. Debug/Trace Register (shared with Debug Mode)	0xB00	RW	mcycle	Machine cycle counter.	
0x320 RW mcountinhibit Machine counter-inhibit register. 0x323 RW mhpmevent3 Machine performance-monitoring event selector. 0x324 RW mhpmevent4 Machine performance-monitoring event selector. 0x33F RW mhpmevent31 Machine performance-monitoring event selector. Debug/Trace Register (shared with Debug Mode)	0xB02	RW	minstret	Machine instruction-retired counter.	
0x323 RW mhpmevent3 Machine performance-monitoring event selector. 0x324 RW mhpmevent4 Machine performance-monitoring event selector. 0x33F RW mhpmevent31 Machine performance-monitoring event selector. Debug/Trace Register (shared with Debug Mode)	Machine Counter Setup				
0x324 RW mhpmevent4 Machine performance-monitoring event selector. 0x33F RW mhpmevent31 Machine performance-monitoring event selector. Debug/Trace Register (shared with Debug Mode)	0x320	RW	mcountinhibit	Machine counter-inhibit register.	
0x33F RW mhpmevent31 Machine performance-monitoring event selector. Debug/Trace Register (shared with Debug Mode)	0x323	RW	mhpmevent3	Machine performance-monitoring event selector.	
Debug/Trace Register (shared with Debug Mode)	0x324	RW	mhpmevent4	Machine performance-monitoring event selector.	
Debug/Trace Register (shared with Debug Mode)					
	0x33F	RW	mhpmevent31	Machine performance-monitoring event selector.	
0x7A0 RW tselect Debug/Trace trigger register select.	Debug/Trace Register (shared with Debug Mode)				
	0x7A0	RW	tselect	Debug/Trace trigger register select.	

Table 78: Machine Mode CSRs

Number	Privilege	Name	Description	
0x7A1	RW	tdata1	First Debug/Trace trigger data register.	
0x7A2	RW	tdata2	Second Debug/Trace trigger data register.	
0x7A3	RW	tdata3	Third Debug/Trace trigger data register.	

Table 78: Machine Mode CSRs

Number	Privilege	Name	Description
0x7B0	RW	dcsr	Debug control and status register.
0x7B1	RW	dpc	Debug PC.
0x7B2	RW	dscratch	Debug scratch register.

Table 79: Debug Mode Registers

5.10.3 CSR Access Ordering

On a given hart, explicit and implicit CSR access are performed in program order with respect to those instructions whose execution behavior is affected by the state of the accessed CSR. In particular, a CSR access is performed after the execution of any prior instructions in program order whose behavior modifies or is modified by the CSR state and before the execution of any subsequent instructions in program order whose behavior modifies or is modified by the CSR state.

Furthermore, a CSR read access instruction returns the accessed CSR state before the execution of the instruction, while a CSR write access instruction updates the accessed CSR state after the execution of the instruction. Where the above program order does not hold, CSR accesses are weakly ordered, and the local hart or other harts may observe the CSR accesses in an order different from program order. In addition, CSR accesses are not ordered with respect to explicit memory accesses, unless a CSR access modifies the execution behavior of the instruction that performs the explicit memory access or unless a CSR access and an explicit memory access are ordered by either the syntactic dependencies defined by the memory model or the ordering requirements defined by the Memory-Ordering PMAs. To enforce ordering in all other cases, software should execute a FENCE instruction between the relevant accesses. For the purposes of the FENCE instruction, CSR read accesses are classified as device input (I), and CSR write accesses are classified as device output (O). For more about the FENCE instructions, see Section 5.14. For CSR accesses that cause side effects, the above ordering constraints apply to the order of the initiation of those side effects but does not necessarily apply to the order of the completion of those side effects.

5.10.4 SiFive RISC-V Implementation Version Registers

mvendorid

The value in mvendorid is 0x489, corresponding to SiFive's JEDEC number.

marchid

The value in marchid indicates the overall microarchitecture of the core and at SiFive we use this to distinguish between core generators. The RISC-V standard convention separates marchid into open-source and proprietary namespaces using the most-significant bit (MSB) of the marchid register; where if the MSB is clear, the marchid is for an open-source core, and if the MSB is set, then marchid is a proprietary microarchitecture. The open-source namespace is managed by the RISC-V Foundation and the proprietary namespace is managed by SiFive.

SiFive's E3 and S5 cores are based on the open-source 3/5-Series microarchitecture, which has a Foundation-allocated marchid of 1. Our other generators are numbered according to the core series.

Value	Core Generator
0x8000_0007	6/7/P200/X200-Series Processor

Table 80: Core Generator Encoding of marchid

mimpid

The value in mimpid holds an encoded value that uniquely identifies the version of the generator used to build this implementation. If your release version is not included in Table 81, contact your SiFive account manager for more information.

Value	Generator Release Version
0x0000_0000	Pre-19.02
0x2019_0228	19.02
0x2019_0531	19.05
0x2019_0919	19.08p0p0 / 19.08.00
0x2019_1105	19.08p1p0 / 19.08.01.00
0x2019_1204	19.08p2p0 / 19.08.02.00
0x2020_0423	19.08p3p0 / 19.08.03.00
0x0120_0626	19.08p4p0 / 19.08.04.00
0x0220_0515	koala.00.00-preview and koala.01.00-preview
0x0220_0603	koala.02.00-preview
0x0220_0630	20G1.03.00 / koala.03.00-general
0x0220_0710	20G1.04.00 / koala.04.00-general
0x0220_0826	20G1.05.00 / koala.05.00-general
0x0320_0908	kiwi.00.00-preview
0x0220_1013	20G1.06.00 / koala.06.00-general
0x0220_1120	20G1.07.00 / koala.07.00-general
0x0421_0205	llama.00.00-preview
0x0421_0324	21G1.01.00 / llama.01.00-general
0x0421_0427	21G1.02.00 / llama.02.00-general
0x0521_0528	mongoose.00.00-preview
0x0521_0714	21G2.01.00 / mongoose.01.00-general
0x0521_1008	21G2.02.00 / mongoose.02.00-general
0x0621_1027	narwhal.00.00-preview
0x0621_1203	narwhal.01.00-preview
0x0621_1222	21G3.02.00 / narwhal.02.00-general

 Table 81:
 Generator Release Encoding of mimpid

Reading Implementation Version Registers

To read the mvendorid, marchid, and mimpid registers, simply replace mimpid with mvendorid or marchid as needed.

In C:

```
uintptr_t mimpid;
__asm__ volatile("csrr %0, mimpid" : "=r"(mimpid));
```

In Assembly:

csrr a5, mimpid

5.10.5 Custom CSRs

SiFive implements some custom CSRs that are specific to the implementation. For these CSRs, including the Feature Disable CSR, consider Chapter 6.

5.11 Base Counters and Timers

RISC-V ISAs provide a set of up to 32×64-bit performance counters and timers that are accessible via unprivileged 64-bit read-only CSR registers 0xC00-0xC1F. The first three of these (CYCLE, TIME, and INSTRET) have dedicated functions; while the remaining counters, if implemented, provide programmable event counting.

The S76-MC Core Complex implements mcycle, mtime, and minstret counters, which have dedicated functions: cycle count, real-time clock, and instructions-retired, respectively. The timer functionality is based on the mtime register. Additionally, the S76-MC Core Complex implements event counters in the form of mhpmcounter, which is used to monitor user requested events.

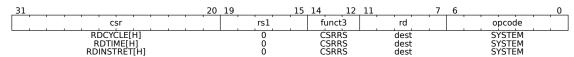


Figure 91: Timer and Counter Pseudoinstructions

Instruction	Description
RDCYCLE rd	Reads the64-bits of the cycle CSR which holds a count of the
	number of clock cycles executed by the processor core on which
	the hart is running from an arbitrary start time in the past.
RDTIME rd	Generates an illegal instruction exception. The mtime register is
	memory mapped to the CLINT register space and can be read
	using a regular load instruction.
RDINSTRET rd	Reads the64-bits of the instret CSR, which counts the number of
	instructions retired by this hart from some arbitrary start point in
	the past.

Table 82: Timer and Counter Pseudoinstruction Description

RDCYCLE, RDTIME, and RDINSTRET pseudoinstructions read the full 64 bits of the cycle, time, and instret counters. The RDCYCLE pseudoinstruction reads the low 64-bits of the cycle CSR (mcycle), which holds a count of the number of clock cycles executed by the processor core on which the hart is running from an arbitrary start time in the past. The RDTIME pseudoinstruction reads the low 64-bits of the time CSR (mtime), which counts wall-clock real time that has passed from an arbitrary start time in the past. The RDINSTRET pseudoinstruction reads the low 64-bits of the instret CSR (minstret), which counts the number of instructions retired by this hart from some arbitrary start point in the past The rate at which the cycle counter advances is rtc_clock. To determine the current rate (cycles per second) of instruction execution, call the metal_timer_get_timebase_frequency API. The

metal_timer_get_timebase_frequency and additional APIs are described in Section 5.11.2 below.

Number	Privilege	Name	Description	
0xC00	RO	cycle	Cycle counter for RDCYCLE instruction	
0xC01	RO	time	Timer for RDTIME instruction	
0xC02	RO	instret	Instruction-retired counter for RDINSTRET instruction	

Table 83: Timer and Counter CSRs

5.11.1 Timer Register

mtime is a 64-bit read-write register that contains the number of cycles counted from the rtc_toggle signal described in the S76-MC Core Complex User Guide. On reset, mtime is cleared to zero.

5.11.2 Timer API

The APIs below are used for reading and manipulating the machine timer. Other APIs are described in more detail within the Freedom Metal documentation. https://sifive.github.io/freedom-metal-docs/

Functions

int metal_timer_get_cyclecount(int hartid, unsigned long long *cyclecount)
 Read the machine cycle count.

Return

0 upon success

Parameters

- · hartid: The hart ID to read the cycle count of
- cyclecount: The variable to hold the value

int metal_timer_get_timebase_frequency(int hartid, unsigned long long *timebase)
 Get the machine timebase frequency.

Return

0 upon success

Parameters

- hartid: The hart ID to read the cycle count of
- timebase: The variable to hold the value

int metal_timer_set_tick(int hartid, int second)

Set the machine timer tick interval in seconds.

Return

0 upon success

Parameters

- · hartid: The hart ID to read the cycle count of
- second: The number of seconds to set the tick interval to

5.12 Privileged Instructions

The RISC-V architecture implements privileged instructions that can only be executed when the S76-MC Core Complex is operating in a privileged mode. The SYSTEM major opcode is used to encode all of the privileged instructions.

5.12.1 Machine-Mode Privileged Instructions

Environment Call and Breakpoint

These ECALL and EBREAK instructions cause a precise requested trap to the supporting execution environment. The ECALL instruction is used to make a service request to the execution environment. The EBREAK instruction is used to return control to a debugging environment.

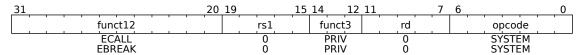


Figure 92: ECALL and EBREAK Instructions

Trap-Return Instructions

To return after handling a trap, there are separate trap return instructions per privilege level: MRET and SRET. MRET is always provided, while SRET is provided if the respective privilege mode is supported. An xRET instruction can be executed in privilege mode x or higher, where executing a lower-privilege xRET instruction will pop the relevant lower-privilege interrupt enable and privilege mode stack.

In addition to manipulating the privilege stack, xRET instructions sets the pc to the value stored in the corresponding xepc register.

Wait for Interrupt

The Wait for Interrupt (WFI) instruction provides a hint to the S76-MC Core Complex that the current hart can be stalled until an interrupt might need servicing. Execution of the WFI instruction can also be used to inform the hardware platform that suitable interrupts should preferentially be routed to this hart.

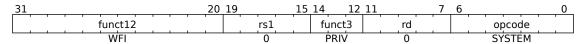


Figure 93: Wait for Interrupt Instruction

If an enabled interrupt is present or later becomes present while the hart is stalled, the interrupt exception will be taken on the following instruction, i.e., execution resumes in the trap handler and mepc = pc + 4. The WFI instruction can also be executed when interrupts are disabled. The operation of WFI must be unaffected by the global interrupt bits in mstatus (MIE/SIE) (i.e., the hart must resume if a locally enabled interrupt becomes pending), but should honor the individual interrupt enables (e.g., MTIE). WFI is also required to resume execution for locally enabled interrupts pending at any privilege level, regardless of the global interrupt enable at each privilege level. If the event that causes the hart to resume execution does not cause an interrupt to be taken, execution will resume at pc + 4, and software must determine what action to take, including looping back to repeat the WFI if there was no actionable event.

The suggested way to call WFI is inside an infinite loop as described below.

```
while (1) {
    __asm__ volatile ("wfi");
}
```

In SiFive's implementation of WFI, the WFI instruction is issued and the core goes into an internal clock gating state.

5.13 ABI - Register File Usage and Calling Conventions

RV64GC_Zba_Zbb_Sscofpmf has 32 x registers that are each 64 bits wide.

Register	ABI Name	Description	Saver
x0	zero	Hard-wired zero	-
x1	ra	Return address	Caller
x2	sp	Stack pointer	Callee
х3	gp	Global pointer	-
x4	tp	Thread pointer	-
x5	t0	Temporary / alternate link register	Caller
x6-7	t1-2	Temporaries	Caller
x8	s0/fp	Saved-register / frame-pointer	Callee
х9	s1	Saved register	Callee
x10-11	a0-1	Function arguments / return values	Caller
x12-17	a2-7	Function arguments	Caller
x18-27	s2-11	Saved registers	Callee
x28-31	t3-6	Temporaries	Caller
	FI	oating-Point Registers	
f0-7	ft0-7	FP temporaries	Caller
f8-9	fs0-1	FP saved registers	Callee
f10-11	fa0-1	FP arguments / return values	Caller
f12-17	fa2-7	FP arguments	Caller
f18-27	fa2-11	FP saved registers	Callee
f28-31	ft8-11	FP temporaries	Caller

Table 84: RISC-V Registers

The programmer counter PC hold the address of the current instruction.

- x1 / ra holds the return address for a call.
- x2 / sp stack pointer, points to the current routine stack.
- x8 / fp / s0 frame pointer, points to the bottom of the top stack frame.
- x3 / gp global pointer, points into the middle of the global data section.

 The common definition is: .data + 0x800. RISC-V immediate values are 12-bit signed values, which is +/- 2048 in decimal or +/- 0x800 in hex. So that global pointer relative accesses can reach their full extent, the global pointer point + 0x800 into the data section. The linker can then relax LUI+LW, LUI+SW into gp-relative LW or SW, i.e., shorter instruction sequences and access most global data using LW at gp +/- offset

```
LW t0 , 0x800(gp)
LW t1 , 0x7FF(gp)
```

 x4 / tp - thread pointer, point to thread-local storage (TLS-mostly used in Linux and RTOS).

If you create a variable in TLS, every thread has its own copy of the variable, i.e., changes to the variable are local to the thread. This is a static area of memory that gets copied for each thread in a program. It is also used to create libraries that have thread-safe functions,

because of the fact that each call to a function has its copy of the same global data, so it's safe.

5.13.1 RISC-V Assembly

RISC-V instructions have opcodes and operands.

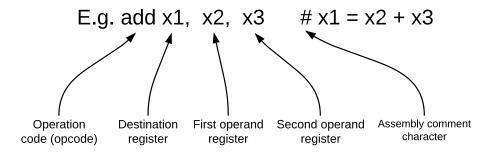


Figure 94: RISC-V Assembly Example

Assembly	С	Description
add x1,x2,x3	a = b + c	a=x1, b=x2, c=x3
sub x3, x4, x5	d = e - f	d=x3, e=x4, f=x5
add x0,x0,x0	NOP	Writes to x0 are always ignored
add x3,x4,x0	f = g	f=x3, g=x4
addi x3,x4,-10	f = g - 10	f=x3, g=x4
lw x10,12(x13) # 12 = 3x4	int A[100];	Reg x10 gets A[3]
add x11,x12,x10	g = h + A[3];	g=x11, h=x12
lw x10,12(x13) # 12 = 3x4	int A[100];	Reg x10 gets A[3]
add x10,x12,x10	A[10] = h + A[3];	h=x12
sw $x10,40(x13) # 40 = 10x4$		Reg x10 gets h + A[3]
bne x13,x14,done	if (i == j)	f=x10, g=x11, h=x12, i=x13, j=x14
add x10,x11,x12	f = g + h;	
done:		
bne x10,x14,else	if (i == j)	f=x10, g=x11, h=x12, i=x13, j=x14
add x10,x11,x12	f = g + h;	
j done	else	
else: sub x10,x11,x12	f = g - h;	
done:		

Table 85: RISC-V Assembly and C Examples

5.13.2 Assembler to Machine Code

The following flowchart describes how the assembler converts the RISC-V assembly code to machine code.

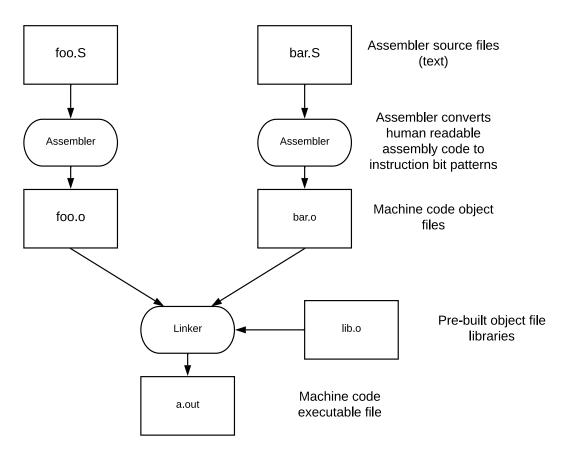


Figure 95: RISC-V Assembly to Machine Code

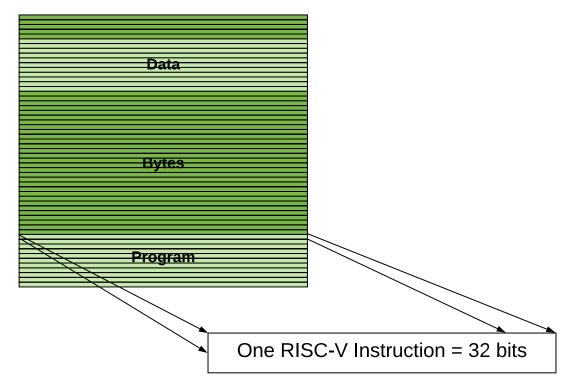


Figure 96: One RISC-V Instruction

5.13.3 Calling a Function (Calling Convention)

- 1. Put parameters in place where function can access them.
- 2. Transfer control to function.
- 3. Acquire local resources needed for function.
- 4. Perform function task.
- 5. Place result values where calling code can access and restore any registers might have used.
- 6. Return control to original caller.

Caller-saved The function invoked can do whatever it likes with the registers. Callee-saved If a function wants to use registers it needs to store and restore them.

Take, for example, the following function:

```
int leaf(int g, int h, int i, int j) {
    int f;
    f = (g+h) - (i+j);
    return f;
}
```

In this function above, arguments are passed in a0, a1, a2 and a3. The return value is returned in a0.

```
addi sp, sp, -8  # adjust stack for 2 items sw s1, 4(sp)  # save 1 for use afterwards sw s0, 0(sp)  # save s0 for use afterwards add s0,a0,a1  # s0 = g + h add s1,a2,a3  # s1 = i + j sub a0,s0,s1  # return value (g + h) - (i + j)  | w s0, 0(sp)  # restore register s0 for caller lw s1, 4(sp)  # restore register s1 for caller addi s1, 4(sp)  # adjust stack to delete 2 items jr ra  # jump back to calling routine
```

In the assembly above, notice that the stack pointer was decremented by 8 to make room to save the registers. Also, s1 and s0 are saved and will be stored at the end.

Nested Functions

In the case of nested function calls, values held in a0-7 and ra will be clobbered.

Take, for example, the following function:

```
int sumSquare(int x, int y) {
  return mult(x,x) + y;
}
```

In the function above, a function called sumSquare is calling mult. To execute the function, there's a value in ra that sumSquare wants to jump back to, but this value will be overwritten by the call to mult.

To avoid this, the sumSquare return address must be saved before the call to mult. To save the return address of sumSquare, the function can utilize stack memory. The user can use stack memory to preserve automatic (local) variables that don't fit within the registers.

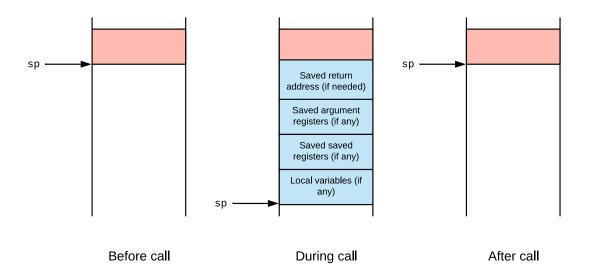


Figure 97: Stack Memory during Function Calls

Consider the assembly for sumSquare below:

```
sumSquare:
addi sp,sp,-8
                   # reserve space on stack
sw ra, 4(sp)
                   # save return address
sw a1, 0(sp)
                   # save v
mv a1,a0
                   # mult(x.x)
                   # call mult
ial mult
lw a1, 0(sp)
                   # restore y
                   # mult()+y
add a0,a0,a1
lw ra, 4(sp)
                   # get return address
addi sp,sp,8
                   # restore stack
mult:...
```

5.14 Memory Ordering - FENCE Instructions

In the RISC-V ISA, each thread, referred to as a hart, observes its own memory operations as if they executed sequentially in program order. RISC-V also has a relaxed memory model, which requires explicit FENCE instructions to guarantee the ordering of memory operations.

The FENCE instructions include FENCE and FENCE.I. The FENCE instruction simply ensures that the memory access instructions before the FENCE instruction get committed before the FENCE instruction is committed. It does not guarantee that those memory access instructions have actually completed. For example, a load instruction before a FENCE instruction can commit without waiting for its value to come back from the memory system. FENCE.I functions the same as FENCE, as well as flushes the instruction cache.

For example, without FENCE instructions:

Hart 1 executes:

Load X Store Y Store Z

Because of relaxed memory model, Hart 2 could see stores/loads arranged in any order:

Store Z Load X Store Y

With FENCE instructions:

Hart 1 executes:

Load X Store Y FENCE Store Z

Hart 2 sees:

Store Y Load X Store Z

With FENCE instructions, Hart 2 is forced to see the Load X and the Store Y prior to the Store Z, but could arbitrarily see Store Y before Load X or Load X before Store Y. Functionally, FENCE instructions order the completion of older memory accesses prior to newer accesses. However, unnecessary FENCE instructions slow processes and can hide bugs, so it is essential to identify where and when FENCE should be used.

5.15 Boot Flow

This process is managed as part of the Freedom Metal source code. The freedom-metal boot code supports single core boot or multi-core boot, and contains all the necessary initialization code to enable every core in the system.

- 1. ENTRY POINT: File: freedom-metal/src/entry.S, label: _enter.
- 2. Write mtvec register with early_trap_vector as default exception handler.
- 3. Initialize global pointer gp register using the generated symbol __global_pointer\$.
- 4. Clear feature disable CSR 0x7c1.
- 5. Read mhartid into register a0 and call _start, which exists in crt0.S.
- 6. We now transition to File: freedom-metal/gloss/crt0.S, label: _start.
- 7. Initialize stack pointer, sp, with _sp generated symbol. Harts with mhartid of one or larger are offset by (_sp + __stack_size × mhartid). The __stack_size field is generated in the linker file.

- 8. Check if mhartid == __metal_boot_hart and run the init code if they are equal. All other harts skip init and go to the Post-Init Flow, step #15.
- 9. Boot Hart Init Flow begins here.
- 10. Init data section to destination in defined RAM space.
- 11. Copy ITIM section, if ITIM code exists, to destination.
- 12. Zero out bss section.
- 13. Call atexit library function that registers the libc and freedom-metal destructors to run after main returns.
- 14. Call the __libc_init_array library function, which runs all functions marked with __attribute__((constructor)).
 - a. For example, PLL, UART, hardware prefetcher, L2, L2 prefetcher, and/or L3, if they exist in the design. This method provides full early initialization prior to entering the main application. Prefetchers are initialized to a known value at startup, but not tuned for any specific workload. Refer to the prefetcher software example that demonstrates this tuning.
- 15. Post-Init Flow Begins Here.
- 16. Call the C routine __metal_synchronize_harts, where hart 0 will release all harts once their individual msip bits are set. The msip bit is typically used to assert a software interrupt on individual harts, however interrupts are not yet enabled, so msip in this case is used as a gatekeeping mechanism.
- 17. Check misa register to see if floating-point hardware is part of the design, and set up mstatus accordingly.
- 18. Single or multi-hart design redirection step.
 - a. If design is a single hart only, or a multi-hart design without a C-implemented function secondary_main, ONLY the boot hart will continue to main().
 - b. For multi-hart designs, all other CPUs will enter sleep via WFI instruction via the weak secondary_main label in crt0.S, while boot hart runs the application program.
 - c. In a multi-hart design which includes a C-defined secondary_main function, all harts will enter secondary_main as the primary C function.

5.16 Linker File

The linker file generates important symbols that are used in the boot code. The linker file options are found in the freedom-e-sdk/bsp path.

There are usually three different linker file options:

• metal.default.lds — Use flash and RAM sections

- metal.ramrodata.lds Place read only data in RAM for better performance
- metal.scratchpad.lds Places all code + data sections into available RAM location

Each linker option can be selected by specifying LINK_TARGET on the command line.

For example:

 $\label{thm:configuration} \mbox{ make PROGRAM=hello TARGET=design-rtl CONFIGURATION=release LINK_TARGET=scratchpad software \\ \mbox{ } \$

The metal.default.lds linker file is selected by default when LINK_TARGET is not specified. If there is a scenario where a custom linker is required, one of the supplied linker files can be copied and renamed and used for the build. For example, if a new linker file named metal.newmap.lds was generated, this can be used at build time by specifying LINK_TARGET=newmap on the command line.

5.16.1 Linker File Symbols

The linker file generates symbols that are used by the startup code, so that software can use these symbols to assign the stack pointer, initialize or copy certain RAM sections, and provide the boot hart information. These symbols are made visible to software using the PROVIDE keyword.

For example:

```
__stack_size = DEFINED(__stack_size) ? __stack_size : 0x400;
PROVIDE(__stack_size = __stack_size);
```

Generated Linker Symbols

A description list of the generated linker symbols is shown below.

__metal_boot_hart

This is an integer number to describe which hart runs the main init flow. The mhartid CSR contains the integer value for each hart. For example, hart 0 has mhartid==0, hart 1 has mhartid==1, and so on. An assembly example is shown below, where a0 already contains the mhartid value.

```
/* If we're not hart 0, skip the initialization work */
la t0, __metal_boot_hart
bne a0, t0, _skip_init
```

An example on how to use this symbol in C code is shown below.

```
extern int __metal_boot_hart;
int boot_hart = (int)&__metal_boot_hart;
```

Additional linker file generated symbols, along with descriptions are shown below.

__metal_chicken_bit

Status bit to tell startup code to zero out the Feature Disable CSR. Details of this register are internal use only.

__global_pointer\$

Static value used to write the gp register at startup.

_sp

Address of the end of stack for hart 0, used to initialize the beginning of the stack since the stack grows lower in memory. On a multi-hart system, the start address of the stack for each hart is calculated using (_sp + __stack_size × mhartid)

```
metal_segment_bss_target_start
metal_segment_bss_target_end
```

Used to zero out global data mapped to .bss section.

• Only __metal_boot_hart runs this code.

```
metal_segment_data_source_start
metal_segment_data_target_start
metal_segment_data_target_end
```

Used to copy data from image to its destination in RAM.

• Only __metal_boot_hart runs this code.

```
metal_segment_itim_source_start
metal_segment_itim_target_start
metal_segment_itim_target_end
    Code or data can be placed in itim sections using the
    __attribute__((section(".itim"))).
```

- When this attribute is applied to code or data, the metal_segment_itim_source_start, metal_segment_itim_target_start, and metal_segment_itim_target_end symbols get updated accordingly, and these symbols allow the startup code to copy code and data into the ITIM area.
 - Only __metal_boot_hart runs this code.

Note

At the time of this writing, the boot flow does not support C++ projects

5.17 RISC-V Compiler Flags

5.17.1 arch, abi, and mtune

RISC-V targets are described using three arguments:

- 1. -march=ISA: selects the architecture to target.
- 2. -mabi=ABI: selects the ABI to target.
- 3. -mtune=CODENAME: selects the microarchitecture to target.

-march

This argument controls which instructions and registers are available for the compiler, as defined by the RISC-V user-level ISA specification.

The RISC-V ISA with 32, 32-bit integer registers and the instructions for multiplication would be denoted as RV32IM. Users can control the set of instructions that GCC uses when generating assembly code by passing the lower-case ISA string to the -march GCC argument; for example, -march=rv32im. On RISC-V systems that don't support particular operations, emulation routines may be used to provide the missing functionality.

Example:

```
double dmul(double a, double b) {
  return a * b;
}
```

will compile directly to a FP multiplication instruction when compiled with the D extension:

```
$ riscv64-unknown-elf-gcc test.c -march=rv64imafdc -mabi=lp64d -o- -S -03
dmul:
    fmul.d fa0,fa0,fa1
    ret
```

but will compile to an emulation routine without the D extension:

```
$ riscv64-unknown-elf-gcc test.c -march=rv64i -mabi=lp64 -o- -S -03
    dmul:
    add    sp,sp,-16
    sd    ra,8(sp)
    call    __muldf3
    ld    ra,8(sp)
    add    sp,sp,16
    jr    ra
```

Similar emulation routines exist for the C intrinsics that are trivially implemented by the M and F extensions.

-mabi

-mabi selects the ABI to target. This controls the calling convention (which arguments are passed in which registers) and the layout of data in memory. The -mabi argument to GCC specifies both the integer and floating-point ABIs to which the generated code complies. Much like how the -march argument specifies which hardware generated code can run on, the -mabi argument specifies which software-generated code can link against. We use the standard naming scheme for integer ABIs (ilp32 or lp64), with an argumental single letter appended to select the floating-point registers used by the ABI (ilp32 vs. ilp32f vs. ilp32d). In order for objects to be linked together, they must follow the same ABI.

RISC-V defines two integer ABIs and three floating-point ABIs.

- i1p32: int, long, and pointers are all 32-bits long. long long is a 64-bit type, char is 8-bit, and short is 16-bit.
- 1p64: long and pointers are 64-bits long, while int is a 32-bit type. The other types remain the same as ilp32.

The floating-point ABIs are a RISC-V specific addition:

- "" (the empty string): No floating-point arguments are passed in registers.
- f: 32-bit and smaller floating-point arguments are passed in registers. This ABI requires the F extension, as without F there are no floating-point registers.
- d: 64-bit and smaller floating-point arguments are passed in registers. This ABI requires the D extension.

arch/abi Combinations

- march=rv32imafdc -mabi=ilp32d: Hardware floating-point instructions can be generated and floating-point arguments are passed in registers. This is like the -mfloat-abi=hard argument for the Arm® architecture GCC.
- march=rv32imac -mabi=ilp32: No floating-point instructions can be generated and no floating-point arguments are passed in registers. This is like the -mfloat-abi=soft argument for the Arm architecture GCC.
- march=rv32imafdc -mabi=ilp32: Hardware floating-point instructions can be generated, but no floating-point arguments will be passed in registers. This is like the -mfloat-abi=softfp argument for the Arm architecture GCC, and is usually used when interfacing with soft-float binaries on a hard-float system.
- march=rv32imac -mabi=ilp32d: Illegal, as the ABI requires floating-point arguments are passed in registers but the ISA defines no floating-point registers to pass them in.

Example:

```
double dmul(double a, double b) {
  return b * a;
}
```

If neither the ABI nor ISA contains the concept of floating-point hardware then the C compiler cannot emit any floating-point-specific instructions. In this case, emulation routines are used to perform the computation and the arguments are passed in integer registers:

```
$ riscv64-unknown-elf-qcc test.c -march=rv32imac -mabi=ilp32 -o- -S -03
 dmul:
           a4,a2
   mν
           a5.a3
   mν
   add
           sp, sp, -16
           a2,a0
   mν
   mν
           a3,a1
           a0,a4
   ΜV
           a1,a5
   mν
           ra,12(sp)
   SW
   call
            muldf3
   lw
           ra,12(sp)
   add
           sp, sp, 16
   jr
```

The second case is the exact opposite of this one: everything is supported in hardware. In this case we can emit a single fmul.d instruction to perform the computation.

```
$ riscv64-unknown-elf-gcc test.c -march=rv32imafdc -mabi=ilp32d -o- -S -03
dmul:
    fmul.d fa0,fa1,fa0
    ret
```

The third combination is for users who may want to generate code that can be linked with code designed for systems that don't subsume a particular extension while still taking advantage of the extra instructions present in a particular extension. This is a common problem when dealing with legacy libraries that need to be integrated into newer systems. For this purpose, the compiler arguments and multilib paths designed to cleanly integrate with this workflow. The generated code is essentially a mix between the two above outputs: the arguments are passed in the registers specified by the ilp32 ABI (as opposed to the ilp32d ABI, which could pass these arguments in registers) but then once inside the function the compiler is free to use the full power of the RV32IMAFDC ISA to actually compute the result. While this is less efficient than the code the compiler could generate if it was allowed to take full advantage of the D-extension registers, it's a lot more efficient than computing the floating-point multiplication without the D-extension instructions

```
$ riscv64-unknown-elf-gcc test.c -march=rv32imafdc -mabi=ilp32 -o- -S -03
    dmul:
      add
              sp, sp, -16
              a0,8(sp)
      SW
              a1,12(sp)
      SW
      fld
              fa5,8(sp)
      SW
              a2,8(sp)
      SW
              a3,12(sp)
      fld
              fa4,8(sp)
      fmul.d fa5,fa5,fa4
              fa5,8(sp)
      lw
              a0,8(sp)
      lw
              a1,12(sp)
      add
              sp,sp,16
      jr
              ra
```

5.18 Compilation Process

GCC driver script is actually running the preprocessor, then the compiler, then the assembler and finally the linker. If the user runs GCC with the --save-temps argument, several intermediate files will be generated.

- \$ riscv64-unknown-linux-gnu-gcc relocation.c -o relocation -03 --save-temps
 - relocation.i: The preprocessed source, which expands any preprocessor directives (things like #include or #ifdef).
 - relocation.s: The output of the actual compiler, which is an assembly file (a text file in the RISC-V assembly format).
 - relocation.o: The output of the assembler, which is an un-linked object file (an ELF file, but not an executable ELF).
 - relocation: The output of the linker, which is a linked executable (an executable ELF file).

5.19 Large Code Model Workarounds

RISC-V software currently requires that linked symbols reside within a 32-bit range. There are two types of code models defined for RISC-V, **medlow** and **medany**. The medany code model generates auipc/ld pairs to refer to global symbols, which allows the code to be linked at any address, while medlow generates lui/ld pairs to refer to global symbols, which restricts the code to be linked around address zero. They both generate 32-bit signed offsets for referring to symbols, so they both restrict the generated code to being linked within a 2 GiB window. When building software, the code model parameter is passed into the RISC-V toolsuite and it defines a method to generate the necessary instruction combinations to access global symbols within the software program. This is done using -mcmodel=medany/medlow. For 32-bit architectures, we use the medlow code model, while medany is used for 64-bit architectures. This is controlled within the 'setting.mk' file in the freedom-e-sdk/bsp folder.

The real problem occurs when:

- 1. Total program size exceeds 2 GiB, which is rare
- 2. When global symbols within a single compiled image are required to reside in a region outside of the 32-bit space

Example for symbols within 32-bit address space:

```
MEMORY
{
    ram (wxa!ri) : ORIGIN = 0x80000000, LENGTH = 0x4000
    flash (rxai!w) : ORIGIN = 0x20400000, LENGTH = 0x1fc000000
}

Example for symbols outside 32-bit address space:

MEMORY
{
    ram (wxa!ri) : ORIGIN = 0x100000000, LENGTH = 0x4000 /* Updated ORIGIN from 0x800000000 */
flash (rxai!w) : ORIGIN = 0x20400000, LENGTH = 0x1fc000000
```

If a software example uses the above memory map, and uses either medlow or medany code models, it will not link successfully. Generated errors will generally contain the following phrase:

```
relocation truncated to fit:
```

A workaround for the linker error "relocation truncated to fit." is to use LINK_TARGET=scratchpad since both the code and data sections get placed into the ram section, as defined by the linker script. Note that this doesn't always solve the problem, since some designs do not have enough memory allocated to the ram section to fit the compiled software

example. To solve these cases, SiFive provides support for the compact code model.

5.19.1 RISC-V Code Model Summary

	Medlow	Medany	Compact
Code	Small	Small	Small
Data	Small	Small	Small
Distance	< 4GB	< 2GB (PC to GOT)	No limitation
Address	4GB (absolute)	No limitation	No limitation

Table 86: RISC-V Code Model Table

As shown in the above table, the compact code model option has no limits on the base address, or the distance between, the code and data sections.

5.19.2 Enabling the Compact Code Model

To enable the large code model, follow the steps below:

- 1. Enable compact code model in settings.mk file to use RISCV_CMODEL = compact instead of RISCV_CMODEL = medany.
- 2. Update assembly files to use new instructions if __riscv_cmodel_compact is defined by the toolsuite.
- 3. Update linker alignment.
- 4. Use the latest GCC+LLVM toolsuite from SiFive, starting with 2021.06.x.

Makefile Update

To enable the toolsuite to generate the proper code sequences for the compact code model, first update settings.mk file, which can be found in the board support package (BSP) path, similar to freedom-e-sdk/bsp/design-rtl.

Change: RISCV_CMODEL = medany ⇒ RISCV_CMODEL = compact

The RISCV_CMODEL definition gets passed into the toolsuite using the -mcmodel switch.

Note

For 32-bit designs, which do not require the use of the compact code model, you will find RISCV_CMODEL = medlow in settings.mk.

This -mcmodel=compact option will enable the symbol __riscv_cmodel_compact to be visible within the code, and can be used to determine the correct code sequences to use within assembly files.

Assembly File Updates

Assembly files may need to be hand-edited to support the compact code model if they reference a global symbol. The following freedom-metal source files now support the compact code model option:

- freedom-metal/src/entry.S
- 2. freedom-metal/src/scrub.S
- freedom-metal/gloss/crt0.S

Linker Alignment

The global pointer alignment is required to be: PROVIDE(__global_pointer\$ = ALIGN . + 0x800), 16;

See metal.default.lds, or the *.lds you plan to use.

5.20 Pipeline Hazards

The pipeline only interlocks on read-after-write and write-after-write hazards, so instructions may be scheduled to avoid stalls.

5.20.1 Read-After-Write Hazards

Read-after-Write (RAW) hazards occur when an instruction tries to read a register before a preceding instruction tries to write to it. This hazard describes a situation where an instruction refers to a result that has not been calculated or retrieved. This situation is possible because even though an instruction was executed after a prior instruction, the prior instruction may only have processed partly through the core pipeline.

Example:

- Instruction 1: x1 + x3 is saved in x2
- Instruction 2: x2 + x3 is saved in x4

The first instruction is calculating a value (x1 + x3) to be saved in x2. The second instruction is going to use the value of x2 to compute a result to be saved in x4. However, in the core pipeline, when operations are fetched for the second operation, the results from the first operation have not yet been saved.

5.20.2 Write-After-Write Hazards

Write-after-write (WAW) hazards occur when an instruction tries to write an operand before it is written by a preceding instruction.

Example:

- Instruction 1: x4 + x7 is saved in x2
- Instruction 2: x1 + x3 is saved in x2

Write-back of instruction 2 must be delayed until instruction 1 finishes executing.

In general, MMIO accesses stall when there is a hazard on the result caused by either RAW or WAW. So, instructions may be scheduled to avoid stalls.

5.21 Reading CSRs

There are several methods for reading the CSRs that are implemented in the S76-MC Core Complex. A full list of the defined RISC-V CSRs are described in Section 5.10.2.

1. Inline assembly using csrr instruction and the register name. For example, reading the misa CSR:

```
int misa;
__asm__ volatile("csrr %0, misa" : "=r" (misa));
```

2. Using the Freedom Metal API METAL_CPU_GET_CSR. Again, reading the misa CSR:

```
int misa_value;
METAL_CPU_GET_CSR(misa,misa_value);
```

In the second method, the first argument is the register name and the second is the variable to store the result in.

Both inline assembly and Freedom Metal API methods can receive the CSR number instead of its name. For example:

```
int mscratch;
METAL_CPU_GET_CSR(0x340, mscratch_value); // reading mscratch csr
```

Note

Accessing CSRs has to be according to the privilege level you are in. Attempting to access a CSR in a privilege level higher than the current level of operation will result in an exception.

To access a privileged CSR, the user must switch to the appropriate privilege level. This can be done using the following Freedom Metal API:

The Freedom Metal API routines and more examples located in freedom-e-sdk/software directory.

Chapter 6

Custom Instructions and CSRs

This chapter describes some of the custom instructions and CSRs configured in the S76-MC Core Complex.

6.1 SiFive Custom Instructions

These custom instructions use the SYSTEM instruction encoding space, which is the same as the custom CSR encoding space, but with funct3=0.

6.1.1 CFLUSH.D.L1

- Implemented as state machine in L1 data cache, for cores with data caches.
- Only available in M-mode. Execution from modes other than M-mode raises an illegalinstruction exception.
- Opcode 0xFC000073, with optional rs1 field in bits [19:15].
- When rs1 = x0, CFLUSH.D.L1 writes back and invalidates all lines in the L1 data cache.
- When rs1 ≠ x0, CFLUSH.D.L1 writes back and invalidates the L1 data cache line containing the virtual address in integer register rs1.
- If the effective privilege mode does not have write permissions to the address in rs1, then a store access or store page-fault exception is raised.
- If the address in rs1 is in an uncacheable region with write permissions, the instruction has no effect but raises no exceptions.
- If the address in rs1 is in an uncacheable region, cache line misaligned accesses may raise an access exception.
- Note that if the PMP scheme write-protects only part of a cache line, then using a value for rs1 in the write-protected region will cause an exception, whereas using a value for rs1 in the write-permitted region will write back the entire cache line.

6.1.2 CDISCARD.D.L1

Implemented as state machine in L1 data cache, for cores with data caches.

- Only available in M-mode. Execution from modes other than M-mode raises an illegalinstruction exception.
- Opcode 0xFC200073, with optional rs1 field in bits [19:15].
- When rs1 = x0, CDISCARD.D.L1 invalidates, but does not write back, all lines in the L1 data cache. Dirty data within the cache is lost.
- When rs1 ≠ x0, CDISCARD.D.L1 invalidates, but does not write back, the L1 data cache
 line containing the virtual address in integer register rs1. Dirty data within the cache line is
 lost.
- If the effective privilege mode does not have write permissions to the address in rs1, then a store access or store page-fault exception is raised.
- If the address in rs1 is in an uncacheable region with write permissions, the instruction has no effect but raises no exceptions.
- If the address in rs1 is in an uncacheable region, cache line misaligned accesses may raise an access exception.
- Note that if the PMP scheme write-protects only part of a cache line, then using a value for rs1 in the write-protected region will cause an exception, whereas using a value for rs1 in the write-permitted region will invalidate and discard the entire cache line.

6.1.3 CEASE

- Privileged instruction only available in M-mode.
- Opcode 0x30500073.
- After retiring CEASE, hart will not retire another instruction until reset.
- Instigates power-down sequence, which will eventually raise the cease_from_tile_N signal to the outside of the Core Complex, indicating that it is safe to power down.
- CEASE has no effect on System Bus Access.
- Debug haltreg will not work after a CEASE instruction has retired.

6.1.4 PAUSE

- Opcode 0x0100000F, which is a FENCE instruction with predecessor set W and null successor set. Therefore, PAUSE is a HINT instruction that executes as a no-op on all RISC-V implementations.
- This instruction may be used for more efficient idling in spin-wait loops.
- This instruction causes a stall of up to 32 cycles or until a cache eviction occurs, whichever comes first.

6.2 SiFive Custom CSRs

These custom CSRs use the custom CSR encoding space. Refer to Appendix C for an exhaustive list of the custom CSRs available on the S76-MC Core Complex.

6.2.1 Branch Prediction Mode CSR

This SiFive custom extension adds an M-mode CSR to control the current branch prediction mode, mbpm at CSR 0x7C0.

The S76-MC Core Complex's branch prediction system includes a Return Address Stack (RAS), a Branch Target Buffer (BTB), and a Branch History Table (BHT). While branch predictors are essential to achieve high performance in pipelined processors, they can also cause undesirable timing variability for hard real-time systems. The mbpm register provides a means to customize the branch predictor behavior to trade average performance for a more predictable execution time.

	Branch Prediction Mode CSR				
CSR	0×7C0				
Bits	Field Name	Attr.	Rst.	Description	
0	static	RW	0x0	Branch-Direction Prediction	
[7:1]	Reserved	RO	0x0		

Table 87: Branch Prediction Mode CSR

The static bit determines the value returned by the BHT component of the branch prediction system. A zero value indicates dynamic direction prediction, and a non-zero value indicates static-taken direction prediction. The BTB is cleared on any write to static, and the RAS is unaffected by writes to static.

6.2.2 SiFive Feature Disable CSR

The SiFive custom M-mode Feature Disable CSR is provided to enable or disable certain microarchitectural features. In the S76-MC Core Complex, CSR 0x7C1 has been allocated for this purpose. These features are described in Table 88.

Warning

The features that can be controlled by this CSR are subject to change or removal in future releases. It is not advised to depend on this CSR for development.

A feature is fully enabled when the associated bit is zero. If a particular core does not support the disabling of a feature, the corresponding bit is hardwired to zero.

On reset, all implemented bits are set to 1, disabling all features. The bootloader is responsible for turning on all required features and can simply write zero to turn on the maximal set of features. SiFive's Freedom Metal bootloader handles turning on these features; when using a custom bootloader, clearing the Feature Disable CSR must be implemented.

Note that arbitrary toggling of the Feature Disable CSR bits is neither recommended nor supported; they are only intended to be set from 1 to 0. A particular Feature Disable CSR bit is only to be used in a very limited number of situations, as detailed in the **Example Usage** entry in Table 89.

	SiFive Feature Disable CSR				
CSR	0x7C1				
Bits	Field Name	Attr.	Rst.	Description	
0	disableDCacheClockGate	RW	0x1	Disable data cache clock gating	
1	disableICacheClockGate	RW	0x1	Disable instruction cache clock gating	
2	disableCoreClockGate	RW	0x1	Disable core clock gating	
3	disableSpeculativeICacheRefill	RW	0x1	Disable speculative instruction cache refill	
[6:4]	Reserved	RO	0x0		
7	disableTileClockGate	RW	0x1	Disable tile clock gating	
8	Reserved	RO	0x0		
9	suppressCorruptOnGrantData	RW	0x1	Suppress corrupt signal on GrantData messages	
[15:10]	Reserved	RO	0x0		
16	branchpredicationdisable	RW	0x1	Disable short forward branch optimization	
17	prefetchdisable	RW	0x1	Disable instruction cache next-line prefetcher	
[31:18]	Reserved	RO	0x0		

Table 88: SiFive Feature Disable CSR

	Feature Disable CSR Usage
Bit	Description / Usage
3	Disable speculative instruction cache refill
	Example Usage A particular integration might require that execution from the System Port range be disallowed. Startup code would first configure PMP to prevent execution from the System Port range, followed by clearing bit 3 of the Feature Disable CSR. This would enable speculative instruction cache refill accesses, without allowing those to access the System Port range because PMP would prohibit such accesses.
9	Suppress corrupt signal on GrantData messages
	Example Usage 1 When running in debug mode on configurations having both ECC and a BEU, setting bit 9 of the Feature Disable CSR will suppress debug mode errors. Example Usage 2 Startup code could scrub errors present in RAMs at power-on, followed by clearing bit 9 of the Feature Disable CSR to allow normal operation.

Table 89: SiFive Feature Disable CSR Usage

6.2.3 Power Dial CSR

The Power Dial CSR, at 0x7C8, provides a method of scaling down dynamic power in a core in order to limit maximum power without frequency changes. This CSR is further described in Section 13.2.1.

6.3 Other Custom Instructions and CSRs

Other custom instructions and CSRs may be implemented, but their functionality is not documented further here, and they should not be used in this version of the S76-MC Core Complex.

Chapter 7

Interrupts and Exceptions

This chapter describes how interrupt and exception concepts in the RISC-V architecture apply to the S76-MC Core Complex.

7.1 Interrupt Concepts

Interrupts are asynchronous events that cause program execution to change to a specific location in the software application to handle the interrupting event. When processing of the interrupt is complete, program execution resumes back to the original program execution location. For example, a timer that triggers every 10 milliseconds will cause the CPU to branch to the interrupt handler, acknowledge the interrupt, and set the next 10 millisecond interval.

The S76-MC Core Complex supports machine mode interrupts.

The Core Complex also has support for the following types of RISC-V interrupts: local and global. Local interrupts are signaled directly to an individual hart with a dedicated interrupt exception code and fixed priority. This allows for reduced interrupt latency as no arbitration is required to determine which hart will service a given request and no additional memory accesses are required to determine the cause of the interrupt. Software and timer interrupts are local interrupts generated by the Core-Local Interruptor (CLINT). The S76-MC Core Complex contains no other local interrupt sources.

Global interrupts are routed through a Platform-Level Interrupt Controller (PLIC), which can direct interrupts to any hart in the system via the external interrupt. Decoupling global interrupts from the harts allow the design of the PLIC to be tailored to the platform, permitting a broad range of attributes like the number of interrupts and the prioritization and routing schemes.

Chapter 8 describes the CLINT. Chapter 9 describes the global interrupt architecture and the PLIC design.

7.2 Exception Concepts

Exceptions are different from interrupts in that they typically occur *synchronously* to the instruction execution flow, and most often are the result of an unexpected event that results in the program to enter an exception handler. For example, if a hart is operating in supervisor mode and attempts to access a machine mode only Control and Status Register (CSR), it will immediately

enter the exception handler and determine the next course of action. The exception code in the mstatus register will hold a value of 0x2, showing that an illegal instruction exception occurred. Based on the requirements of the system, the supervisor mode application may report an error and/or terminate the program entirely.

There are no specific enable bits to allow exceptions to occur since they are always enabled by default. However, early in the boot flow, software should set up mtvec.BASE to a defined value, which contains the base address of the default exception handler. All exceptions will trap to mtvec.BASE. Software must read the mcause CSR to determine the source of the exception, and take appropriate action.

Synchronous exceptions that occur from within an interrupt handler will immediately cause program execution to abort the interrupt handler and enter the exception handler. Exceptions within an interrupt handler are usually the result of a software bug and should generally be avoided since mepc and meause CSRs will be overwritten from the values captured in the original interrupt context.

The RISC-V defined synchronous exceptions have a priority order which may need to be considered when multiple exceptions occur simultaneously from a single instruction. Table 90 describes the synchronous exception priority order.

Priority	Exception Code	Description	
Highest	3	Instruction address breakpoint	
	12	Instruction page fault	
	1	Instruction access fault	
	2	Illegal instruction	
	0	Instruction address misaligned	
	8, 9, 11	Environment call	
	3	Environment break	
	3	Load/Store/AMO address breakpoint	
	6	Store/AMO address misaligned	
	4	Load address misaligned	
	15	Store/AMO page fault	
	13	Load page fault	
Lowest	7	Store/AMO access fault	
Lowest	5	Load access fault	

Table 90: Exception Priority

Refer to Table 98 for the full list of exception codes.

Data address breakpoints (watchpoints), Instruction address breakpoints, and environment break exceptions (EBREAK) all have the same exception code (3), but different priority, as shown in the table above.

Instruction address misaligned exceptions (0) have lower priority than other instruction address exceptions because they are the result of control-flow instructions with misaligned targets, rather than from instruction fetch.

Some of the helpful CSRs for debugging exceptions and interrupts are described below:

CSR	Description
exception	SiFive Scope signal. Indicates the moment that an exception occurs in the
	write-back (commit) stage.
mcause	Contains the cause value of the exception/interrupt. See Section 7.7.5 for more
	description.
mepc	Contains the pc where the exception occurs.
mtval	If the cause is a load/store fault, this register has the value of the problematic
	address. If it is an invalid instruction, it provides the instruction that the core
	tried to execute.
mstatus	Contains the interrupt enables, privilege modes, and general status of
	execution. See Section 7.7.1 for more description.
mtvec	Contains the vector that the core will jump to when an exception occurs. If this
	is not a valid executable value, you may get a double exception when jumping
	to the exception handler, so it is important to look at all these registers when the
	exception FIRST occurs. See Section 7.7.2 for more description.

Table 91: Summary of Exception and Interrupt CSRs

7.3 Trap Concepts

The term trap describes the transfer of control in a software application, where trap handling typically executes in a more privileged environment. For example, a particular hart contains three privilege modes: machine, supervisor, and user. Each privilege mode has its own software execution environment including a dedicated stack area. Additionally, each privilege mode contains separate control and status registers (CSRs) for trap handling. While operating in user mode, a context switch is required to handle an event in supervisor mode. The software sets up the system for a context switch and then an ECALL instruction is executed, which synchronously switches control to the environment-call-from-user-mode exception handler.

The default mode out of reset is machine mode. Software begins execution at the highest privilege level, which allows all CSRs and system resources to be initialized before any privilege level changes. The steps below describe the required steps necessary to change privilege mode from machine to user mode, on a particular design that also includes supervisor mode.

- 1. Interrupts should first be disabled globally by writing mstatus.MIE to 0, which is the default reset value.
- 2. Write mtvec CSR with the base address of the machine mode exception handler. This is a required step in any boot flow.
- 3. Write mstatus.MPP to 0 to set the previous mode to user, which allows us to *return* to that mode.

- 4. Setup the Physical Memory Protection (PMP) regions to grant the required regions to user and supervisor mode, and optionally, revoke permissions from machine mode.
- 5. Write stvec CSR with the base address of the supervisor mode exception handler.
- 6. Write medeleg register to delegate exceptions to supervisor mode. Consider ECALL and page fault exceptions.
- 7. Write mstatus. FS to enable floating-point (if supported).
- 8. Store machine mode user registers to stack or to an application-specific frame pointer.
- 9. Write mepc with the entry point of user mode software
- 10. Execute mret instruction to enter user mode.

Note

There is only one set of user registers (x1-x31) that are used across all privilege levels, so application software is responsible for saving and restoring state when entering and exiting different levels.

7.4 Interrupt Block Diagram

The S76-MC Core Complex interrupt architecture is depicted in Figure 98.

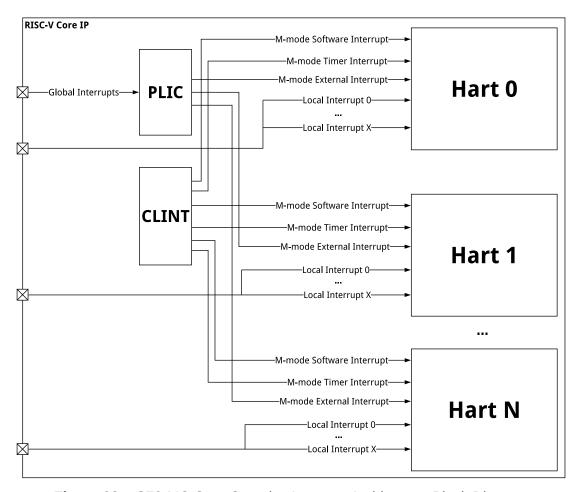


Figure 98: S76-MC Core Complex Interrupt Architecture Block Diagram

7.5 Local Interrupts

Software interrupts (Interrupt ID #3) are triggered by writing the memory-mapped interrupt pending register msip for a particular hart. Other harts are able to write msip to trigger a software interrupt on any other hart in the S76-MC Core Complex. This allows for efficient interprocessor communication. The msip register is described in Table 96.

Timer interrupts (Interrupt ID #7) are triggered when the memory-mapped register mtime is greater than or equal to the global timebase register mtimecmp, and both registers are part of the CLINT memory map. mtimecmp can be written by other harts to set up timer interrupts. The mtime and mtimecmp registers are generally only available in machine mode, unless the PMP grants user mode access to the memory-mapped region in which they reside.

Global interrupts are usually first routed to the PLIC, then into the hart using external interrupts (Interrupt ID #11).

7.6 Interrupt Operation

If the global interrupt-enable mstatus.MIE is clear, then no interrupts will be taken. If mstatus.MIE is set, then pending-enabled interrupts at a higher interrupt level will preempt current execution and run the interrupt handler for the higher interrupt level.

When an interrupt or synchronous exception is taken, the privilege mode is modified to reflect the new privilege mode. The global interrupt-enable bit of the handler's privilege mode is cleared.

7.6.1 Interrupt Entry and Exit

When an interrupt occurs:

- The value of mstatus.MIE is copied into mcause.MPIE, and then mstatus.MIE is cleared, effectively disabling interrupts.
- The privilege mode prior to the interrupt is encoded in mstatus. MPP.
- The current pc is copied into the mepc register, and then pc is set to the value specified by mtvec as defined by the mtvec.MODE described in Table 94.

At this point, control is handed over to software in the interrupt handler with interrupts disabled. When an mret instruction is executed, the following occurs:

- The privilege mode is set to the value encoded in mstatus. MPP.
- The global interrupt enable, mstatus.MIE, is set to the value of mcause.MPIE.
- The pc is set to the value of mepc.

At this point, control is handed over to software.

At the software level, interrupt attributes can be applied to interrupt processing functions, as described in Section 8.4.

The Control and Status Registers (CSRs) involved in handling RISC-V interrupts are described in Section 7.7.

7.7 Interrupt Control and Status Registers

The S76-MC Core Complex specific implementation of interrupt CSRs is described below. For a complete description of RISC-V interrupt behavior and how to access CSRs, please consult *The RISC-V Instruction Set Manual, Volume II: Privileged Architecture, Version 1.11*.

7.7.1 Machine Status Register (mstatus)

The mstatus register keeps track of and controls the hart's current operating state, including whether or not interrupts are enabled. A summary of the mstatus fields related to interrupts in the S76-MC Core Complex is provided in Table 92. Note that this is not a complete description of mstatus as it contains fields unrelated to interrupts. For the full description of mstatus, please consult *The RISC-V Instruction Set Manual, Volume II: Privileged Architecture, Version* 1.11.

Machine Status Register (mstatus)				
CSR		0×300		
Bits	Field Name	Attr.	Description	
[2:0]	Reserved	WPRI		
3	MIE	RW	Machine Interrupt Enable	
[6:4]	Reserved	WPRI		
7	MPIE	RW	Machine Previous Interrupt Enable	
[10:8]	Reserved	WPRI		
[12:11]	MPP[1:0]	RW	Machine Previous Privilege Mode	

Table 92: Machine Status Register (partial)

Interrupts are enabled by setting the MIE bit in mstatus. Prior to writing mstatus.MIE=1, it is recommended to first enable interrupts in mie.

7.7.2 Machine Trap Vector (mtvec)

The mtvec register has two main functions: defining the base address of the trap vector, and setting the mode by which the S76-MC Core Complex will process interrupts. For Direct and Vectored modes, the interrupt processing mode is defined in the MODE field of the mtvec register. The mtvec register is described in Table 93, and the mtvec.MODE field is described in Table 94.

	Machine Trap Vector Register (mtvec)			
CSR		0x305		
Bits	Field Name	Attr.	Description	
[1:0]	MODE	WARL	MODE Sets the interrupt processing mode.	
			The encoding for the S76-MC Core Complex	
			supported modes is described in Table 94.	
[63:2]	BASE[63:2]	WARL	Interrupt Vector Base Address.	
			Operating in Direct Mode requires 4-byte alignment.	
			Operating in Vectored Mode requires 256-byte alignment.	

Table 93: Machine Trap Vector Register

	MODE Field Encoding mtvec.MODE			
Value	Mode	Description		
0x0	Direct	All asynchronous interrupts and synchronous		
		exceptions set pc to BASE.		
0x1	Vectored	Exceptions set pc to BASE, interrupts set pc to BASE		
		+4×mcause.EXCCODE.		
≥0x2	Reserved			

Table 94: Encoding of mtvec.MODE

Mode Direct

When operating in direct mode, all interrupts and exceptions trap to the mtvec.BASE address. Inside the trap handler, software must read the mcause register to determine what triggered the trap. The mcause register is described in Table 97.

When operating in Direct Mode, BASE must be 4-byte aligned.

Mode Vectored

While operating in vectored mode, interrupts set the pc to $mtvec.BASE + 4 \times exception$ code (mcause.EXCCODE). For example, if a machine timer interrupt is taken, the pc is set to mtvec.BASE + 0x1C. Typically, the trap vector table is populated with jump instructions to transfer control to interrupt-specific trap handlers.

In vectored interrupt mode, BASE must be 256-byte aligned.

All machine external interrupts (global interrupts) are mapped to exception code 11. Thus, when interrupt vectoring is enabled, the pc is set to address mtvec.BASE + 0x2C for any global interrupt.

7.7.3 Machine Interrupt Enable (mie)

Individual interrupts are enabled by setting the appropriate bit in the mie register. The mie register is described in Table 95.

	Machine Interrupt Enable Register (mie)				
CSR		0×304			
Bits	Field Name	Attr.	Description		
[2:0]	Reserved	WPRI			
3	MSIE	RW	Machine Software Interrupt Enable		
[6:4]	Reserved	WPRI			
7	MTIE	RW	Machine Timer Interrupt Enable		
[10:8]	Reserved	WPRI			
11	MEIE	RW	Machine External Interrupt Enable		
[63:12]	Reserved	WPRI			

Table 95: Machine Interrupt Enable Register

7.7.4 Machine Interrupt Pending (mip)

The machine interrupt pending (mip) register indicates which interrupts are currently pending. The mip register is described in Table 96.

	Machine Interrupt Pending Register (mip)			
CSR		0×344		
Bits	Field Name	Attr.	Description	
[2:0]	Reserved	WIRI		
3	MSIP	RO	Machine Software Interrupt Pending	
[6:4]	Reserved	WIRI		
7	MTIP	RO	Machine Timer Interrupt Pending	
[10:8]	Reserved	WIRI		
11	MEIP	RO	Machine External Interrupt Pending	
[63:12]	Reserved	WIRI		

Table 96: Machine Interrupt Pending Register

7.7.5 Machine Cause (mcause)

When a trap is taken in machine mode, meause is written with a code indicating the event that caused the trap. When the event that caused the trap is an interrupt, the most-significant bit of meause is set to 1, and the least-significant bits indicate the interrupt number, using the same encoding as the bit positions in mip. For example, a Machine Timer Interrupt causes meause to be set to 0x8000_0000_0000_0007. meause is also used to indicate the cause of synchronous exceptions, in which case the most-significant bit of meause is set to 0.

See Table 97 for more details about the mcause register. Refer to Table 98 for a list of synchronous exception codes.

	Machine Cause Register (mcause)			
CSR		0x342		
Bits	Field Name	Attr.	Description	
[9:0]	EXCCODE	WLRL	A code identifying the last exception.	
[62:10]	Reserved	WLRL		
63	Interrupt	WARL	1, if the trap was caused by an interrupt; 0 otherwise.	

Table 97: Machine Cause Register

Interrupt	Exception Code	Description		
1	0–2	Reserved		
1	3	Machine software interrupt		
1	4–6	Reserved		
1	7	Machine timer interrupt		
1	8–10	Reserved		
1	11	Machine external interrupt		
1	12–13	Reserved		
1	14	Debug interrupt		
1	≥15	Reserved		
0	0	Instruction address misaligned		
0	1	Instruction access fault		
0	2	Illegal instruction		
0	3	Breakpoint		
0	4	Load address misaligned		
0	5	Load access fault		
0	6	Store/AMO address misaligned		
0	7	Store/AMO access fault		
0	8	Environment call from U-mode		
0	9–10	Reserved		
0	11	Environment call from M-mode		
0	12–13	Reserved		
0	14	Debug exception		
0	≥15	Reserved		

Table 98: mcause Exception Codes

Note that there are scenarios where a misaligned load or store will generate an access exception instead of an address-misaligned exception. The access exception is raised when the misaligned access should not be emulated in a trap handler, e.g., emulating an access in an I/O region, as such emulation could cause undesirable side-effects.

7.7.6 Minimum Interrupt Configuration

The minimum configuration needed to configure an interrupt is shown below.

- Write mtvec to configure the interrupt mode and the base address for the interrupt vector table.
- Enable interrupts in memory-mapped PLIC register space. The CLINT does not contain interrupt enable bits.
- Write mie CSR to enable the software, timer, and external interrupt enables for each privilege mode.
- Write mstatus to enable interrupts globally for each supported privilege mode.

7.8 Interrupt Priorities

Individual priorities of global interrupts are determined by the PLIC, as discussed in Chapter 9.

S76-MC Core Complex interrupts are prioritized as follows, in decreasing order of priority:

- Machine external interrupts
- Machine software interrupts
- · Machine timer interrupts

7.9 Interrupt Latency

Interrupt latency for the S76-MC Core Complex is four external_source_for_core_N_clock cycles, as counted by the number of cycles it takes from signaling of the interrupt to the hart to the first instruction fetch of the handler.

Global interrupts routed through the PLIC incur additional latency of three clock cycles, where the PLIC is clocked by clock. This means that the total latency, in cycles, for a global interrupt is: $4 + 3 \times (external_source_for_core_N_clock Hz \div clock Hz)$. This is a best-case cycle count and assumes the handler is cached or located in ITIM. It does not take into account additional latency from a peripheral source.

7.10 Non-Maskable Interrupt

The rnmi (resumable non-maskable interrupt) interrupt signal is a level-sensitive input to the hart. Non-maskable interrupts have higher priority than any other interrupt or exception on the hart and cannot be disabled by software. Specifically, they are not disabled by clearing the mstatus.mie register.

7.10.1 Handler Addresses

The NMI has an associated exception trap handler address. This address is set by external input signals, described in the S76-MC Core Complex User Guide.

7.10.2 RNMI CSRs

These M-mode CSRs enable a resumable non-maskable interrupt (RNMI).

Number	Name	Description
0x350	mnscratch	Resumable Non-maskable scratch register
0x351	mnepc	Resumable Non-maskable EPC value
0x352	mncause	Resumable Non-maskable cause value
0x353	mnstatus	Resumable Non-maskable status

Table 99: RNMI CSRs

- The mnscratch CSR holds a 64-bit read-write register, which enables the NMI trap handler to save and restore the context that was interrupted.
- The mnepc CSR is a 64-bit read-write register, which, on entry to the NMI trap handler, holds the PC of the instruction that took the interrupt. The lowest bit of mnepc is hardwired to zero.
- The mncause CSR holds the reason for the NMI, with bit 63 set to 1, and the NMI cause encoded in the least-significant bits, or zero if NMI causes are not supported. The lower bits of mncause, defined as the exception_code, are as follows:

mncause	NMI Cause	Function	
1	Reserved	Reserved	
2	RNMI input pin	External rnmi_N input	
3	Reserved	Reserved	

Table 100: mncause.exception_code Fields

- The mnstatus CSR holds a two-bit field mnpp encoded in the same manner as mstatus.mpp, which, on entry to the trap handler, holds the privilege mode of the interrupted context.
- mnstatus also hold the one-bit field mnie indicating whether NMIs are currently enabled.
 This bit can only be cleared by hardware, but can be set by software to indicate a further NMI can be taken.

Bits	Field Name	Description	
3	mnie	RMNI interrupt enable	
7	mnpv	Hardwired to zero	
12:11	mnpp	RMNI previous priority level	

Table 101: mnstatus CSR Fields

7.10.3 MNRET Instruction

This M-mode only instruction uses the values in mnepc and mnstatus to return to the program counter and privileged mode of the interrupted context. This instruction also sets the internal rnmie state bits.

Encoding is same as MRET except with bit 30 set (i.e., funct7=0111000). For example:

.word 0x70200073 // opcode for MNRET (return from RNMI)

7.10.4 RNMI Operation

When an RNMI interrupt is detected, the interrupted PC is written to the mnepc CSR, the type of RNMI to the mncause CSR, and the privilege mode of the interrupted context to the mnstatus CSR. An internal microarchitectural state bit, rnmie, is cleared to indicate that the processor is in an RNMI handler and cannot take a new RNMI interrupt. When clear, the internal rnmie bit also disables all other interrupts.

Note

These interrupts are called non-maskable because software cannot mask the interrupts. However, for correct operation, other instances of the same interrupt must be held off until the handler is completed, hence the internal state bit.

The RNMI handler can resume original execution using the MNRET instruction (described in Section 7.10.3), which restores the PC from mnepc, the privilege mode from mnstatus, and also sets the internal rnmie state bit, which re-enables other interrupts.

If the hart encounters an exception while the rnmie bit is clear, the exception state is written to mepc and mcause, mstatus.mpp is set to M-mode, and the hart jumps to the RNMI exception handler address.

Note

Traps in the RNMI handler can only be resumed if they occur while the handler was servicing an interrupt that occurred outside of machine mode.

Chapter 8

Core-Local Interruptor (CLINT)

This chapter describes the operation of the Core-Local Interruptor (CLINT). The S76-MC Core Complex CLINT complies with *The RISC-V Instruction Set Manual, Volume II: Privileged Architecture, Version 1.11*.

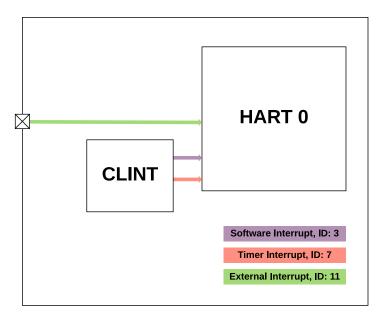


Figure 99: CLINT Block Diagram

The CLINT has a small footprint and provides software, timer, and external interrupts directly to the hart. The CLINT block also holds memory-mapped control and status registers associated with software and timer interrupts.

8.1 CLINT Priorities and Preemption

The CLINT has a fixed priority scheme, described in Section 7.8, and nested interrupts (preemption) within a given privilege level is not supported. Higher privilege levels may preempt lower privilege levels, however. The CLINT offers two modes of operation, Direct mode and Vectored mode. In Direct mode, all interrupts and exceptions trap to mtvec.BASE. In Vectored mode, exceptions trap to mtvec.BASE, but interrupts will jump directly to their vector table index. See Section 7.7.2 for more information about mtvec.BASE.

8.2 CLINT Vector Table

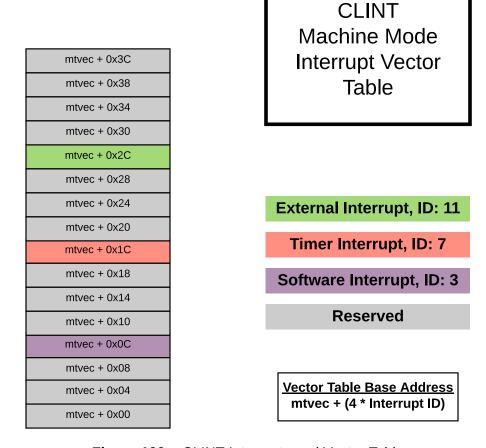


Figure 100: CLINT Interrupts and Vector Table

The CLINT vector table is populated with jump instructions, since hardware jumps to the index in the vector table first, then subsequently jumps to the handler. All exception types trap to the first entry in the table, which is mtvec.BASE.

An example CLINT vector table is shown below.

```
.weak default_exception_handler
.balign 4, 0
.global default_exception_handler
.weak software_handler
.balign 4, 0
.global software_handler
.weak timer_handler
.balign 4, 0
.global timer_handler
.weak external_handler
.balign 4, 0
.global external_handler
.option norvc
.weak __mtvec_clint_vector_table
#if __riscv_xlen == 32
.balign 128, 0
#else
.balign 256, 0
#endif
.global __mtvec_clint_vector_table
__mtvec_clint_vector_table:
IRQ 0:
        j default_exception_handler
IRO 1:
        j default_vector_handler
IRQ_2:
        j default_vector_handler
IRQ_3:
        j software handler
IRQ_4:
        j default_vector_handler
IRQ_5:
        j default_vector_handler
IRQ_6:
        j default_vector_handler
IRQ 7:
        j timer_handler
IRQ_8:
        j default_vector_handler
IRQ_9:
        j default_vector_handler
IRQ_10:
        j default_vector_handler
IRQ_11:
        j external_handler
IRQ_12:
        j default_vector_handler
IRQ_13:
        j default_vector_handler
IRQ 14:
        j default_vector_handler
IRQ 15:
        j default_vector_handler
```

Figure 101: CLINT Vector Table Example

8.3 CLINT Interrupt Sources

The S76-MC Core Complex supports the standard RISC-V software, timer, and external interrupts.

CLINT Interrupt IDs are provided in Table 102.

S76-MC Core Complex Interrupt IDs			
ID	Interrupt Notes		
0–2	Reserved		
3	msip	Machine Software Interrupt	
4–6	Reserved		
7	mtip	Machine Timer Interrupt	
8–10	Reserved		
11	meip	Machine External Interrupt	

Table 102: S76-MC Core Complex Interrupt IDs

8.4 CLINT Interrupt Attribute

To help with efficiency of save and restore context, interrupt attributes can be applied to functions used for interrupt handling.

```
void __attribute__((interrupt))
software_handler (void) {
   // handler code
}
```

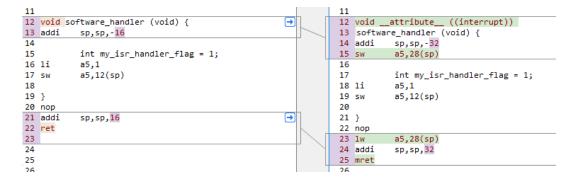


Figure 102: CLINT Interrupt Attribute Example

This attribute will save and restore registers that are used within the handler, and insert an mret instruction at the end of the handler.

8.5 CLINT Memory Map

Table 103 shows the memory map for CLINT on the S76-MC Core Complex. Note that there are no enable bits for specific interrupts within the CLINT memory map, as the enables for these interrupts reside in the mie CSR for each interrupt, and the mstatus.mie CSR bit, which enables all machine interrupts globally. See Section 7.7.3 for a description of the interrupt enable bits in the mie CSR, and Section 7.7.4 for a description of the interrupt pending bits in the mip CSR.

Address	Width	Attr.	Description	Notes
0x0200_0000	4B	RW	msip for hart 0	MSIP Registers (1-bit wide)
0x0200_0004	4B	RW	msip for hart 1	
0x0200_0008	4B	RW	msip for hart 2	
0x0200_000C	4B	RW	msip for hart 3	
0x0200_0010			Reserved	
0x0200_3FFF				
0x0200_4000	8B	RW	mtimecmp for hart 0	MTIMECMP Registers
0x0200_4008	8B	RW	mtimecmp for hart 1	
0x0200_4010	8B	RW	mtimecmp for hart 2	
0x0200_4018	8B	RW	mtimecmp for hart 3	
0x0200_4020			Reserved	
0x0200_BFF7				
0x0200_BFF8	8B	RW	mtime	Timer Register
0x0200_C000			Reserved	

Table 103: CLINT Memory Map

8.6 Register Descriptions

This section describes the functionality of the memory-mapped registers in the CLINT.

8.6.1 MSIP Register

Machine mode software interrupts are generated by writing to the memory-mapped control register msip. Each msip register is a 32-bit wide **WARL** register, where the upper 31 bits are tied to 0. The least-significant bit is reflected in the MSIP bit of the mip CSR. Other bits in the msip register are hardwired to zero. On reset, each msip register is cleared to zero.

Software interrupts are most useful for interprocessor communication in multi-hart systems, as harts may write each other's msip bits to effect interprocessor interrupts.

8.6.2 Timer Registers

mtime is a 64-bit read-write register that contains the number of cycles counted from the rtc_toggle signal, which is described in the S76-MC Core Complex User Guide. A timer interrupt is pending whenever mtime is greater than or equal to the value in the mtimecmp register. The timer interrupt is reflected in the mtip bit of the mip register, described in Chapter 7.

On reset, mtime is cleared to zero. The mtimecmp registers are not reset.

Note that mtime is volatile and may be masked in IP-XACT.

Chapter 9

Platform-Level Interrupt Controller (PLIC)

This chapter describes the operation of the Platform-Level Interrupt Controller (PLIC) on the S76-MC Core Complex. The PLIC complies with *The RISC-V Instruction Set Manual, Volume II: Privileged Architecture, Version 1.11* and can support a maximum of 127 external interrupt sources with 7 priority levels.

The S76-MC Core Complex PLIC resides in the clock timing domain, allowing for relaxed timing requirements. The latency of global interrupts, as perceived by a hart, increases with the ratio of the external_source_for_core_N_clock frequency and the clock frequency.

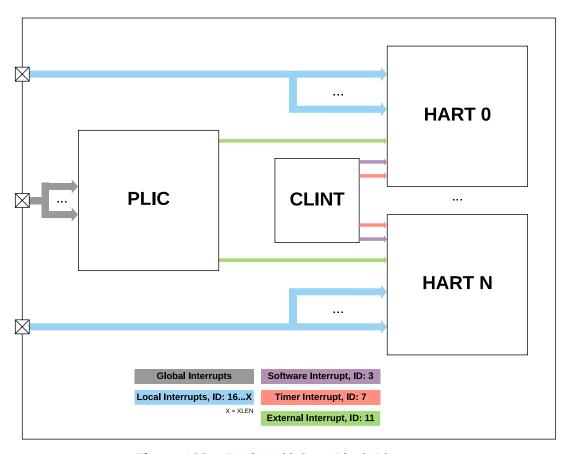


Figure 103: PLIC Multi-Core Block Diagram

9.1 Memory Map

The memory map for the S76-MC Core Complex PLIC control registers is shown in Table 104. The PLIC memory map only supports aligned 32-bit memory accesses.

Address	Width	Attr.	Description	Notes	
0x0C00_0000			Reserved		
0x0C00_0004	4B	RW	Source 1 priority	Con Continu O 2 for more	
				See Section 9.3 for more information	
0x0C00_01FC	4B	RW	Source 127 priority		
0x0C00_0200			Reserved		
0x0C00_1000	4B	RO	Start of pending array	Con Continuo O A for more	
				See Section 9.4 for more information	
0x0C00_100C	4B	RO	Last word of pending array		
0x0C00_1010			Reserved		
0x0C00_2000	4B	RW	Start Hart 0 M-Mode interrupt		
			enables	Con Continu O F for more	
				See Section 9.5 for more information	
0x0C00_200C	4B	RW	End Hart 0 M-Mode interrupt		
			enables		
0x0C00_2010			Reserved		
0x0C00_2080	4B	RW	Start Hart 1 M-Mode interrupt		
			enables	See Section 9.5 for more	
				- information	
0x0C00_208C	4B	RW	End Hart 1 M-Mode interrupt		
			enables		
0x0C00_2090			Reserved		
0x0C00_2100	4B	RW	Start Hart 2 M-Mode interrupt		
			enables	See Section 9.5 for more	
	40	D) 4 /	Final Hout O NA Mode into www.net	information	
0x0C00_210C	4B	RW	End Hart 2 M-Mode interrupt		
0,0000 2110			enables Reserved		
0×0C00_2110			Reserved		
 0v0000 2190	4B	RW	Start Hart 3 M Mode interrupt		
0x0C00_2180	4D	IT VV	Start Hart 3 M-Mode interrupt enables		
			CHADICS	See Section 9.5 for more	
0×0C00_218C	4B	RW	End Hart 3 M-Mode interrupt	- information	
0,0000_2100	- טד	1144	enables		
0x0C00_2190			Reserved		
0x0C1F_F000	1B	RW	PLIC global clock gating	See Section 9.6 for more	
5552 500			disable feature	information	
			Reserved	211110000001	

Table 104: PLIC Memory Map

Address	Width	Attr.	Description	Notes
0x0C20_0000	4B	RW	Hart 0 M-Mode priority threshold	See Section 9.7 for more information
0x0C20_0004	4B	RW	Hart 0 M-Mode claim/ complete	See Section 9.8 for more information
0x0C20_0008 			Reserved	
0x0C20_1000	4B	RW	Hart 1 M-Mode priority threshold	See Section 9.7 for more information
0x0C20_1004	4B	RW	Hart 1 M-Mode claim/ complete	See Section 9.8 for more information
0x0C20_1008 			Reserved	
0x0C20_2000	4B	RW	Hart 2 M-Mode priority threshold	See Section 9.7 for more information
0x0C20_2004	4B	RW	Hart 2 M-Mode claim/ complete	See Section 9.8 for more information
0x0C20_2008 			Reserved	
0x0C20_3000	4B	RW	Hart 3 M-Mode priority threshold	See Section 9.7 for more information
0x0C20_3004	4B	RW	Hart 3 M-Mode claim/ complete	See Section 9.8 for more information
0x0C20_3008			Reserved	
0x1000_0000			End of PLIC Memory Map	

Table 104: PLIC Memory Map

9.2 Interrupt Sources

The S76-MC Core Complex has a total of 127 external global interrupt sources, in addition to the local interrupts described in Table 102.

Note

In the RISC-V Platform-Level Interrupt Controller Specification, interrupt source 0 (ID 0) is unused, so the first usable PLIC Interrupt ID has a value of 1.

Table 105 describes the mapping of external global interrupts to its corresponding top-level global_interrupts signal bit. This signal is positive-level triggered and not configurable. See the S76-MC Core Complex User Guide for further description of global_interrupts.

global_interrupts Signal	PLIC Interrupt ID	PLIC Pending / Enable Register
global_interrupts[0]	1	pending1[1] / enable1[1]*
global_interrupts[1]	2	pending1[2] / enable1[2]
global_interrupts[2]	3	pending1[3] / enable1[3]
global_interrupts[126]	127	pending4[31] / enable4[31]
*pending1[0] and enable1[0] are unused	

Table 105: Mapping of global_interrupts Signal Bits to PLIC Interrupt ID

9.3 Interrupt Priorities

Each PLIC interrupt source can be assigned a priority by writing to its 32-bit memory-mapped priority register. The S76-MC Core Complex supports 7 levels of priority. A priority value of 0 is reserved to mean "never interrupt" and effectively disables the interrupt. Priority 1 is the lowest active priority, and priority 7 is the highest. Ties between global interrupts of the same priority are broken by the Interrupt ID; interrupts with the lowest ID have the highest effective priority. See Table 106 for the detailed register description.

PLIC Interrupt Priority Register					
Ва	ase Address		0x0C00_0000 + 4 × Interrupt ID		
Bits	Field Name	Attr.	Rst.	Description	
[2:0]	Priority	RW	Х	Global interrupt priority	
[31:3]	Reserved	RO	0x0		

Table 106: PLIC Interrupt Priority Register

9.4 Interrupt Pending Bits

The current status of the interrupt source pending bits in the PLIC core can be read from the pending array, organized as 4 words of 32 bits. The pending bit for interrupt ID N is stored in bit ($N \mod 32$) of word (N / 32). As such, the S76-MC Core Complex has four interrupt pending registers. Bit 0 of word 0, which represents the non-existent interrupt source 0, is hardwired to zero.

A pending bit in the PLIC core can be cleared by setting the associated enable bit then performing a claim as described in Section 9.8.

	PLIC Interrupt Pending Register 1					
Ва	ase Address			0x0C00_1000		
Bits	Field Name	Attr.	Rst.	Description		
0	Interrupt 0 Pending	RO	Х	Non-existent global interrupt 0 is hardwired to zero		
1	Interrupt 1 Pending	RO	Х	Pending bit for global interrupt 1		
2	Interrupt 2 Pending	RO	Х	Pending bit for global interrupt 2		
31	Interrupt 31 Pending	RO	Х	Pending bit for global interrupt 31		

Table 107: PLIC Interrupt Pending Register 1

	PLIC Interrupt Pending Register 4					
В	Base Address 0x0C00_100C					
Bits	Field Name	Attr.	Rst.	Description		
0	Interrupt 96 Pending	RO	Х	Pending bit for global interrupt 96		
31	Interrupt 127 Pending	RO	Х	Pending bit for global interrupt 127		

Table 108: PLIC Interrupt Pending Register 4

9.5 Interrupt Enables

Each global interrupt can be enabled by setting the corresponding bit in the enable registers. The enable registers are accessed as a contiguous array of 4×32 -bit words, packed the same way as the pending bits. Bit 0 of enable word 0 represents the non-existent interrupt ID 0 and is hardwired to 0.

64-bit and 32-bit word accesses are supported by the enables array in SiFive RV64 systems.

	PLIC Interrupt Enable Register 1 for Hart 0 M-Mode						
Ва	ase Address		0x0C00_2000				
Bits	Field Name	Attr. Rst. Description					
0	Interrupt 0 Enable	RO	0×0	Non-existent global interrupt 0 is			
				hardwired to zero			
1	Interrupt 1 Enable	RW	Х	Enable bit for global interrupt 1			
2	Interrupt 2 Enable	RW	Х	Enable bit for global interrupt 2			
31	Interrupt 31	RW	Х	Enable bit for global interrupt 31			
	Enable						

Table 109: PLIC Interrupt Enable Register 1 for Hart 0 M-Mode

	PLIC Interrupt Enable Register 4 for Hart 0 M-Mode					
В	ase Address	0x0C00_200C				
Bits	Field Name	Attr.	Rst.	Description		
0	Interrupt 96 Enable	RW	Х	Enable bit for global interrupt 96		
31	Interrupt 127 Enable	RW	Х	Enable bit for global interrupt 127		

Table 110: PLIC Interrupt Enable Register 4 for Hart 0 M-Mode

9.6 PLIC Clock Gate Disable

The PLIC implements a clock gating feature to gate the module clock node when not active. PLIC clock gating is disabled out of reset and should be enabled in startup code, unless otherwise specified by SiFive erratum. Once enabled, clock is only available when there is activity on the PLIC control bus or on any interrupt line when the corresponding interrupt is not inflight. Clock gating is further described in the S76-MC Core Complex User Guide.

	PLIC Clock Gate Disable Register						
	Base Address			0x0C1F_F000			
Bits	Field Name	Attr.	Rst.	Description			
0	disablePlicClockGateFeature	RW	0x1	Used to enable/disable PLIC clock gating feature. Clear to enable.			
[7:1]	Reserved	RO	0×0				

Table 111: PLIC Clock Gate Disable Register

9.7 Priority Thresholds

The S76-MC Core Complex supports setting of an interrupt priority threshold via the threshold register. The threshold is a **WARL** field, where the S76-MC Core Complex supports a maximum threshold of 7.

The S76-MC Core Complex masks all PLIC interrupts of a priority less than or equal to threshold. For example, a threshold value of zero permits all interrupts with non-zero priority, whereas a value of 7 masks all interrupts. If the threshold register contains a value of 5, all PLIC interrupt configured with priorities from 1 through 5 will not be allowed to propagate to the CPU.

	PLIC Interrupt Priority Threshold Register for Hart 0 M-Mode					
Ва	ase Address			0x0C20_0000		
Bits	Field Name	Attr.	Rst.	Description		
[2:0]	Threshold	WARL	Χ	Sets the priority threshold		
[31:3]	Reserved	RO	0x0			

Table 112: PLIC Interrupt Priority Threshold Register for Hart 0 M-Mode

9.8 Interrupt Claim Process

A S76-MC Core Complex hart can perform an interrupt claim by reading the claim_complete register (Table 113), which returns the ID of the highest-priority pending interrupt or zero if there is no pending interrupt. A successful claim also atomically clears the corresponding pending bit on the interrupt source.

A S76-MC Core Complex hart can perform a claim at any time, even if the MEIP bit in its mip (Table 96) register is not set.

The claim operation is not affected by the setting of the priority threshold register.

9.9 Interrupt Completion

A S76-MC Core Complex hart signals it has completed executing an interrupt handler by writing the interrupt ID it received from the claim to the claim_complete register (Table 113). The PLIC does not check whether the completion ID is the same as the last claim ID for that target. If the completion ID does not match an interrupt source that is currently enabled for the target, the completion is silently ignored.

	PLIC Claim/Complete Register for Hart 0 M-Mode					
В	ase Address			0x0C20_0004		
Bits	Field Name	Attr.	Rst.	Description		
[31:0]	Interrupt Claim/ Complete for Hart 0 M-Mode	RW	X	A read of zero indicates that no interrupts are pending. A non-zero read contains the ID of the highest pending interrupt. A write to this register signals completion of the interrupt ID written. Consecutive reads will not return the same result. Note that this field is volatile and may be masked in IP-XACT.		

Table 113: PLIC Claim/Complete Register for Hart 0 M-Mode

The PLIC cannot forward a new interrupt to a hart that has claimed an interrupt, but has not yet finished the complete step of the interrupt handler. Thus, the PLIC does not support preemption of global interrupts to an individual hart.

Interrupt IDs for global interrupts routed through the PLIC are independent of the interrupt IDs for local interrupts. The PLIC handler may check for additional pending global interrupts once the initial claim/complete process has finished, prior to exiting the handler. This method could save additional PLIC save/restore context for global interrupts.

9.10 Example PLIC Interrupt Handler

Since the PLIC interfaces with the CPU through external interrupt #11, the external handler must contain an additional claim/complete step that is used to handshake with the PLIC logic.

```
void external_handler() {
   //get the highest priority pending PLIC interrupt
   uint32_t int_num = plic.claim_complete;

   //branch to handler
   plic_handler[int_num]();

   //complete interrupt by writing interrupt number back to PLIC
   plic.claim_complete = int_num;

   // Add additional checks for PLIC pending here, if desired
}
```

If a CPU reads claim_complete and it returns 0, the interrupt does not require processing, and thus write-back of the claim/complete is not necessary.

The plic_handler[]() routine shown above demonstrates one method to implement a software table where the offset of the function that resides within the table is determined by the

PLIC interrupt ID. The PLIC interrupt ID is unique to the PLIC, in that it is completely independent of the interrupt IDs of local interrupts.

Chapter 10

TileLink Error Device

The Error Device is a TileLink slave that responds to all requests with a TileLink denied error and all reads with a corrupt error. It has no registers. The entire memory range discards writes and returns zeros on read. Both operation acknowledgements carry an error indication.

The Error Device serves a dual role. Internally, it is used as a landing pad for illegal off-chip requests. However, it is also useful for testing software handling of bus errors.

Chapter 11

Level 2 Prefetcher

The SiFive L2 Prefetcher is a per-hart device that allows the L2 to perform accesses to memory based on the patterns of data accesses made by the harts in the Core Complex. For instance, if a hart is reading every 100th byte of a large array and accesses are missing the L1 data cache, the prefetcher will detect this. It will then allocate the appropriate memory addresses to the L2 Cache so subsequent accesses to the array will hit in the L2 Cache. This reduces overall access time to the array and improves performance of the application.

The S76-MC Core Complex contains four L2 Prefetcher instances. Their addresses are shown in Table 114.

Instance	Base Address
Hart 0 L2 Prefetcher	0x0203_0000
Hart 1 L2 Prefetcher	0x0203_2000
Hart 2 L2 Prefetcher	0x0203_4000
Hart 3 L2 Prefetcher	0x0203_6000

Table 114: L2 Prefetcher Instances

11.1 Operation

The L2 Prefetcher can monitor eight different data streams per hart, where a stream consists of a base address and a stride between memory addresses. Prefetches are automatically issued to the memory system when possible and a prefetch queue of eight entries holds the accesses before they are issued. The range of a prefetch (or maximum stride length) in terms of cache lines is set by the additionalCtrl.window register. For instance, if this is set to 0x4, then streams with a stride of 256 bytes or greater will be ignored (assuming each cache line is 64 bytes).

The initial number of prefetches (or prefetch distance) made per stream is set by basicCtrl.initialDist. The prefetching distance will adapt based on the success of the prefetching and the overall range of prefetching. If a hart continues to make direct accesses which match the stride of the stream (both in magnitude and sign), then additional prefetches will be made, and the prefetch distance can increase. It's possible that the direct accesses made by a hart will be too fast for the prefetcher, and the hart will have to wait for the L2 to populate. When this occurs, the L2 Prefetcher will increase the prefetch distance (i.e., emit more

prefetches) to minimize the chance of this occurring. The threshold to increase the prefetching distance is set by additionalCtrl.hitMSHRThrd.

The maximum number of prefetches emitted for a stream is limited by basicCtrl.maxAllowedDist. The prefetch distance will increase gradually, but at times this may not be fast enough. The speed of the ramp-up from the initial distance to the maximum is managed automatically by the prefetcher. The basicCtrl.linToExpThrd setting can be used to fine-tune this adaptive ramp-up. The smaller the value of this field, the faster the prefetcher will reach the maximum prefetch distance.

Prefetches are issued only if there are idle L2 Miss Status Holding Registers (MSHRs). The additionalCtrl.qFullnessThrd value is used to control when the prefetcher will stop issuing hints to the memory system. This 4-bit field allows the total number of MSHRs in the L2 Cache to be represented in fractions of 1/16th. For instance, a threshold value of 0xC means that if 75% of the MSHRs are allocated, prefetches will be stalled until the number of MSHRs in use drops below 75% available. This setting allows the prefetcher to be tuned such that the direct accesses made by the Core Complex (from harts and Front Port masters) aren't stalled by the prefetcher.

The prefetcher monitors both reads and writes to memory and the strides can either be incrementing or decrementing addresses. Prefetching is disabled at reset; scalar support can be enabled with the basicCtrl.scalarLoadSupportEn and additionalCtrl.scalarStoreSupportEn bits, and vector support can be enabled with the additionalCtrl.vectorLoadSupportEn and additionalCtrl.vectorStoreSupportEn bits.

11.2 Retiring Streams

It's unlikely that a prefetch stream will continue indefinitely for the life of an application, so the L2 Prefetcher accommodates a method to retire old streams. This allows new streams to be tracked.

A stream can be retired by successfully hitting in the L2 Cache without the need for prefetching. If enough consecutive accesses hit in the L2 Cache, which were not prefetched, then there is no need for the prefetcher to continue monitoring the stream. The additionalCtrl.hitCacheThrd field sets this threshold for retiring the stream.

11.3 Page Boundaries

The L2 Prefetcher can be programmed to cross 4 KiB page boundaries of memory. This is useful in an application environment in which there is no OS page protection, or where OS page protection can be ignored. When basicCtrl.crossPageEn is set, prefetching can cross 4 KiB boundaries. Prefetching will resume if the hart continues to make accesses that match the stride in the new 4 KiB page of memory.

11.4 Memory Map

The memory map for the L2 Prefetcher control registers is shown in Table 115.

Offset	Name	Description
0x0	basicCtrl	L2 Prefetcher basic control register
0x4	additionalCtrl	L2 Prefetcher additional control register

Table 115: L2 Prefetcher Memory Map

11.5 Control Registers

The L2 Prefetcher control registers basicCtrl and additionalCtrl are described in the below tables.

	Basic Control Register (basicCtrl)				
Register Address		L2 Prefetcher Base Address			
Bits	Field Name	Attr.	Rst.	Description	
0	scalarLoadSupportEn	RW	0x0	Enable hardware prefetcher support	
				for scalar loads	
1	Reserved	RW	0x0		
[7:2]	initialDist	RW	0x3	Initial prefetch distance	
[13:8]	maxAllowedDist	RW	0xA	Maximum allowed prefetch distance	
[19:14]	linToExpThrd	RW	0x5	Linear-to-exponential prefetch	
				distance threshold	
[27:20]	Reserved	RW	0x0		
28	crossPageEn	RW	0x0	Enable prefetches to cross-pages.	
				When crossPageEn == 1, the	
				prefetches will cross 4K boundary, if	
				needed.	
[30:29]	forgiveThrd	RW	0x0	Threshold for forgiving loads with	
_	-			mismatching strides when L2	
				Prefetcher is in trained state. Set to 0	
				to disable this feature (default).	
31	Reserved	RO	0x0		

Table 116: Basic Control Register

	Additional Control Register (additionalCtrl)				
Register Address		L2 Prefetcher Base Address + 0x4			
Bits	Field Name	Attr.	Rst.	Description	
[3:0]	qFullnessThrd	RW	0xE	Threshold fraction/16 of MSHRs to stop sending hits	
[8:4]	hitCacheThrd	RW	0x5	Threshold number of cache tag hits for evicting prefetch entry	
[12:9]	hitMSHRThrd	RW	0x2	Threshold number of demand hits on hint MSHRs for increasing prefetch distance	
[18:13]	window	RW	0x6	Size of the comparison window for address matching	
19	scalarStoreSupportEn	RW	0x0	Enable hardware prefetcher support for scalar stores	
20	vectorLoadSupportEn	RW	0x0	Enable hardware prefetcher support for vector loads	
21	vectorStoreSupportEn	RW	0x0	Enable hardware prefetcher support for vector stores	
[31:22]	Reserved				

Table 117: Additional Control Register

11.6 L2 Prefetcher Initialization

The L2 Prefetcher needs to be initialized in the boot software prior to use. Once initialized, the L2 Prefetcher can be tuned on a per-configuration basis as needed. Refer to the L2 prefetcher software example that demonstrates this tuning.

Chapter 12

Level 2 Cache Controller

This chapter describes the functionality of the Level 2 Cache Controller used in the S76-MC Core Complex.

12.1 Level 2 Cache Controller Overview

The SiFive Level 2 Cache Controller is used to provide access to fast copies of memory for masters in a Core Complex. The Level 2 Cache Controller also acts as a directory-based coherency manager.

The SiFive Level 2 Cache Controller offers extensive flexibility, as it allows for several features in addition to the Level 2 Cache functionality. These include memory-mapped access to L2 Cache RAM for disabled cache ways, scratchpad functionality, way masking and locking, ECC support with error tracking statistics, error injection, and interrupt signaling capabilities.

These features are described in Section 12.2.

12.2 Functional Description

The S76-MC Core Complex L2 Cache is a 512 KiB 16-way set-associative cache. It has a line size of 64 bytes and is read/write-allocate with a random replacement policy. The cache operates in write-back mode only. The L2 Cache is composed of 2 banks. This subdivision into banks helps facilitate increased available bandwidth between CPU masters and the L2 Cache, as each bank has its own dedicated 128-bit TL-C inner port. As such, multiple requests to different banks may proceed in parallel.

The outer port of the L2 Cache Controller is a 128-bit TL-C port shared among all banks and typically connected to a DDR controller. The outer Memory Port of the L2 Cache Controller is shared among all banks and typically connected to cacheable memory. The overall organization of the L2 Cache Controller is depicted in Figure 104.

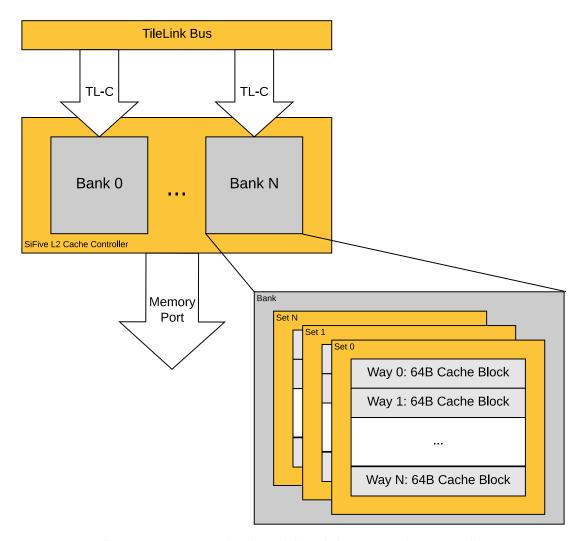


Figure 104: Organization of the SiFive L2 Cache Controller

12.2.1 Way Enable and the L2 Loosely-Integrated Memory (L2 LIM)

The SiFive Level 2 Cache Controller allows for its SRAMs to act either as direct-addressed memory in the Core Complex address space or as a cache that is controlled by the L2 Cache Controller, which can contain a copy of any cacheable address.

When cache ways are disabled, they are addressable in the L2 Loosely-Integrated Memory (L2 LIM) address space as described in the S76-MC Core Complex memory map in Section 4.2. The L2 LIM is an uncacheable port into unused L2 SRAM and provides deterministic access time. It is neither cached by the L1 data cache nor memory backed, as it is just a dedicated software-addressable, low latency, uncached memory. Fetching instructions or data from the L2 LIM provides deterministic behavior equivalent to an L2 Cache hit, with no possibility of a cache miss. Accesses to the L2 LIM are always given priority over cache way accesses, which target the same L2 Cache bank.

Out of reset, all ways, except for way 0, are disabled. Cache ways can be enabled by writing to the wayEnable register described in Section 12.4.2. Once a cache way is enabled, it cannot be disabled unless the S76-MC Core Complex is reset. The highest numbered L2 cache way is mapped to the lowest L2 LIM address space, and way 1 occupies the highest L2 LIM address range. As L2 cache ways are enabled, the size of the L2 LIM address space shrinks. The mapping of L2 cache ways to L2 LIM address space is shown in Figure 105, where N is the number of L2 cache ways, each of size 32 KiB (0x0000_8000).

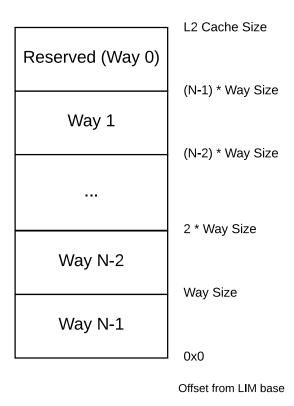


Figure 105: Mapping of L2 Cache Ways to L2 LIM Addresses

12.2.2 Way Masking and Locking

The SiFive L2 Cache Controller can control the amount of cache memory a CPU master is able to allocate into by using the WayMaskN register described in Section 12.4.4. Note that WayMaskN registers only affect allocations, and reads can still occur to ways that are masked. As such, it becomes possible to lock down specific cache ways by masking them in all WayMaskN registers. In this scenario, all masters can still read data in the locked cache ways but cannot evict data.

The following example shows how to lock the L2 cache ways:

- 1. For the following example, assume the data to be locked is not present in any of the L2 ways.
- 2. Select an L2 way where the data is to be locked to.

- 3. From Table 127, select the Master ID(s) to be used to load the data that is to be locked into the L2.
- 4. Clear bit M of the WayMaskN register for the other masters, besides the master(s) selected in the step above, to enable allocation by the selected master(s) into locked way M. The WayMaskN_M registers are described in Table 123.
 - a. Use Table 123 to locate the WayMaskN register(s).
- 5. Enable the WayMask registers for the selected master(s).
 - a. Set bit M of the WayMaskN register to 1, and clear other bits in that register, to allow master N to be able to allocate data only into way M of the L2.
- 6. Load the data to be locked into the L2 way M. Note that becaue the L2 is an inclusive cache, any load access by the master N will allocated the cache line for that access into the L2 cache.
- 7. Set the WayMaskN_M bit for this way to zero. At this point, no other master can evict data from this way.
- 8. If unlocking the data from way M is desired at some point in the future, set bit M in some or all of the WayMaskN registers.

12.2.3 L2 Zero Device

The SiFive L2 Cache Controller has a dedicated scratchpad address region that allows for allocation into the cache using an address range that is not memory backed. This address region is denoted as the L2 Zero Device in the Section 4.2 memory map. Writes to the scratchpad region allocate into cache ways that are enabled and not masked.

A Zero Device ignores write data and always returns zero on reads. The S76-MC Core Complex provides a Zero Device behind the L2 Cache, similar to the Memory Port. When combined with locked L2 cache ways, which prevent eviction, locations within a Zero Device's address range appear to retain their value. This provides a mechanism to create L1 cacheable memory that is essentially backed by L2 SRAM until the way is released (and the value resets to zero). The L2 Zero Device is cacheable like the Memory Port. However, if dirty data is evicted and a write-back to the L2 Zero Device occurs, the Zero Device will discard the write data. Therefore, care must be taken with the scratchpad, as there is no memory backing this address space. Cache evictions from addresses in the scratchpad result in data loss.

The main advantage of the L2 Zero Device over the L2 LIM is that it is a cacheable region allowing for data stored to the scratchpad to also be cached in a master's L1 data cache, which results in faster access.

To understand the difference between the L2 LIM and the L2 Zero Device, consider Figure 106. Notice that the L2 LIM accesses the same blocks of memory as the main path into the L2 Cache, whereas the L2 Zero Device sits behind L2 Cache much like the Memory Port:

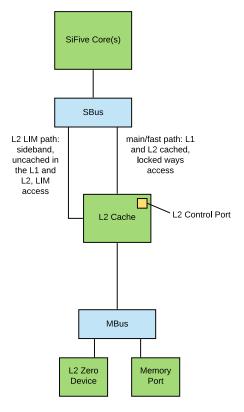


Figure 106: Difference between L2 LIM and L2 Zero Device

The recommended procedure for using the L2 Zero Device is as follows:

- 1. Use the WayEnable register to enable the desired cache ways
- Designate a single master that will allocate into the scratchpad. For this procedure, we designate this master as Master S. All other masters (CPU and non-CPU) are denoted as Masters N.
- 3. Masters N: Write to the WayMaskN register to mask the ways that are to be used for the scratchpad. This prevents Masters N from evicting cache lines in the designated scratchpad ways.
- 4. Master S: Write to the WayMaskN register to mask all ways *except* the ways that are to be used for the scratchpad. At this point, Master S should only be able to allocate into the cache ways meant to be used as a scratchpad.
- 5. Master S: Write scratchpad data into the L2 Zero Device address range
- 6. Master S: Repeat steps 4 and 5 for each way to be used as scratchpad
- 7. Master S: Use the WayMaskN register to mask the scratchpad ways for Master S so that it is no longer able to evict cache lines from the designated scratchpad ways
- 8. At this point, the scratchpad ways should contain the scratchpad data, with all masters able to read, write, and execute from this address space, and no masters able to evict the scratchpad contents

12.2.4 L2 Features Access Summary

Table 118 describes the L2 features as a function of Way Enable and Way Mask.

Way Enable	Way Mask	Access Base Address	L2 Feature
0	X	0x0800_0000	LIM
1	0	0x8000_0000	Way Masking and Locking — Fast Read
			access
1	0	0x0A00_0000	Zero Device — Fast Read access from
			scratchpad
1	1	0×8000_0000	Way Masking and Locking — Write data
			mode
1	1	0x0A00_0000	Zero Device — Write data to scratchpad

Table 118: L2 Features Access Summary

12.2.5 L2 Performance Monitor

Similar to the hardware performance monitor (HPM) for the core, the L2 Cache also has an L2 performance monitoring (L2PM) facility. It consists of a set of event-programmable counters and their event selector registers. The registers are available to control the behavior of the counters. The performance event selector and other control registers are configured in machine mode, and the event-programmable counters can be read in user mode.

L2PM Event Selector Registers (pmEventSelectX)

The L2PM event selector CSRs (pmEventSelect0-5) follow the definition of mhpmeventX as defined in the RISC-V ISA. They are 64-bit bit **WARL** registers. To control the event type to count, these CSRs are used to program the corresponding event counters.

Offset	Bits	Access	Description
0x2000	64	RW	pmEventSelect0
0x2008	64	RW	pmEventSelect1
0x2010	64	RW	pmEventSelect2
0x2018	64	RW	pmEventSelect3
0x2020	64	RW	pmEventSelect4
0x2028	64	RW	pmEventSelect5

Table 119: L2 Performance Monitor Event Selectors

The event selectors are partitioned into two fields: the lower 8 bits select an event class, and the upper bits form a mask of events in that class.

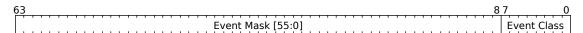


Figure 107: Event Selector Fields

The counter increments if the event corresponding to any set mask bit occurs.

L2PM Counter Client Filter CSR (pmClientFilterX)

The L2PM counter client filter register (pmclientFilter0) is a 64-bit **WARL** register that controls which client's performance events are excluded from incrementing the performance monitor counters. However, some events might not be attributed to a particular client in a specific implementation (for example, the L2 release event in SiFive's L2 Cache design).

Offset	Bits	Access	Description
0x2800	64	RW	pmClientFilter0

Table 120: L2 Performance Monitor Counter Client Filter

L2 Performance Monitor Counters (pmEventCounterX)

The L2 Performance Monitor counters (pmEventCounter0-5), follow the definition of mhpmcounterX as defined in the RISC-V ISA. They are 64-bit **WARL** registers.

Offset	Bits	Access	Description
0x3000	64	RW	pmEventCounter0
0x3008	64	RW	pmEventCounter1
0x3010	64	RW	pmEventCounter2
0x3018	64	RW	pmEventCounter3
0x3020	64	RW	pmEventCounter4
0x3028	64	RW	pmEventCounter5

Table 121: L2 Performance Monitor Counters

Note

If a counter is not implemented, such as when there is no L2PM, both the counter and its corresponding event selector are hard-wired to 0, meaning that the counter always returns 0.

Event Selector Encodings

Table 122 describes the event selector encodings available. Events are categorized into two classes based on the Event Class field encoded in pmEventSelectX[7:0]. One or more events can be programmed by setting the respective Event Mask bit for a given event class. An event selector encoding of 0 means "count nothing". Multiple events will cause the counter to increment any time any of the selected events occur.

	L2 Performance Monitor Event Register			
	Transaction Events, pmEventSelectX[7:0]=0x1			
Bits	Description	Can use ClientFilter?		
0	PutFullData request from inner cache	Yes		
1	PutPartialData request from inner cache	Yes		
2	AtomicData request from inner cache	Yes		
3	Get request from inner cache	Yes		
4	PrefetchRead request from inner cache	Yes		
5	PrefetchWrite request from inner cache	Yes		
6	AcquireBlock.NtoB request from inner cache	Yes		
7	AcquireBlock.NtoT request from inner cache	Yes		
8	AcquireBlock.BtoT request from inner cache	Yes		
9	AcquirePerm.NtoT request from inner cache	Yes		
10	AcquirePerm.BtoT request from inner cache	Yes		
11	Release. TtoB request from inner cache	Yes		
12	Release. TtoN request from inner cache	Yes		
13	Release.BtoN request from inner cache	Yes		
14	ReleaseData. TtoB request from inner cache	Yes		
15	ReleaseData. TtoN request from inner cache	Yes		
16	ReleaseData.BtoN request from inner cache	Yes		
17	ProbeBlock.toT request from outer cache	No		
18	ProbeBlock.toB request from outer cache	No		
19	ProbeBlock.toN request from outer cache	No		
	L2 Query Result Events, pmEventSelectX[7:0]=	0x2		
Bits	Description	Can use ClientFilter?		
0	PutFullData request from inner cache hits a valid line in L2	Yes		
1	PutPartialData request from inner cache hits a valid line in L2	Yes		
2	AtomicData request from inner cache hits a valid line in L2	Yes		
3	Get request from inner cache hits a valid line in L2	Yes		
4	Prefetch request from inner cache hits a valid line in L2	Yes		
5	AcquireBlock request from inner cache hits a valid line in L2	Yes		
6	AcquirePerm request from inner cache hits a valid line in L2	Yes		
7	Release request from inner cache hits a valid line in L2	Yes		
8	ReleaseData request from inner cache hits a valid line in L2	Yes		
9	Probe request from outer cache hits a valid line in L2	No		
10	PutFullData request from inner cache hits a shared line in L2	Yes		

Table 122: L2PM pmEventSelect Register

11	PutPartialData request from inner cache hits a shared line in L2	yes		
12	AtomicData request from inner cache hits a shared line in L2	Yes		
13	Get request from inner cache hits a shared line in L2	Yes		
14	Prefetch request from inner cache hits a shared line in L2	Yes		
15	AcquireBlock request from inner cache hits a shared line in L2	Yes		
16	AcquirePerm request from inner cache hits a shared line in L2	Yes		
17	Probe request from outer cache hits a shared line in L2	No		
18	Probe request from outer cache hits a dirty line in L2	No		
	L2 Request Events, pmEventSelectX[7:0]=0	(3		
Bits	Description	Can use ClientFilter?		
0	AcquireBlock.NtoB request to outer cache, miss	No		
1	AcquireBlock.NtoT request to outer cache, miss	No		
2	AcquireBlock.BtoT request to outer cache, miss	No		
3	AcquirePerm.NtoT request to outer cache, miss	No		
4	AcquirePerm.BtoT request to outer cache, miss	No		
5	Release. TtoB request to outer cache, eviction	No		
6	Release. TtoN request to outer cache, eviction	No		
7	Release.BtoN request to outer cache, eviction	No		
8	ReleaseData.TtoB request to outer cache, not applicable	No		
9	ReleaseData. TtoN request to outer cache, dirty eviction	No		
10	ReleaseData.BtoN request to outer cache, not applicable	No		
11	ProbeBlock.toT request to inner cache, code miss hits other harts	No		
12	ProbeBlock.toB request to inner cache, load miss hits other harts	No		
13	ProbeBlock.toN request to inner cache, store miss hits other harts	No		
	Other Events, pmEventSelectX[7:0]=0x4			
Bits	Description	Can use ClientFilter?		
0	Hint request from inner cache hits an inflight miss request	Yes		
Note:	Note: "Inner cache" refers to the inner side of the L2 cache, i.e., transactions from the core			
and Front Port. "Outer cache" refers to the other side of the L2 Cache, i.e., read/write				
transactions from the L2 and probe requests from outside.				

Table 122: L2PM pmEventSelect Register

Setting up the pmClientFilterX Register

Table 127 shows the mapping of L2 Cache masters and their client ID.

Note that the default value of pmClientFilterX is 0, meaning all clients' events are counted. To disable event counting for a particular client, set its corresponding bit in pmClientFilterX.

Programming the pmEventSelect registers

The following example shows the use of 6 performance counters:

```
// directory lookup events: L1 miss
                       | // Event Set 1
*pmEventSelect0 = 0x01
               ( (0x01 << 6 ) | // innerAcquireBlockNtoB
                (0x01 << 7) | // innerAcquireBlockNtoT
                (0x01 << 8 ) | // innerAcquireBlockBtoT
                (0x01 << 9 ) | // innerAcquirePermNtoT
                (0x01 << 10) //
                                    innerAcquirePermB2T
               ) << 8;
// directory lookup results: L1 miss hit L2
                       | // Event Set 2
*pmEventSelect1 = 0x02
               ( (0x01 << 5)
                             | // innerAcquireBlock_Hit
                (0x01 << 6) // innerAcquirePerm_Hit</pre>
               ) << 8;
// directory lookup events: prefetch
                      | //
*pmEventSelect2 = 0x01
                                     Event Set 1
               ( (0x01 << 4 ) | // innerPrefetchRead
                (0x01 << 5) // innerPrefetchWrite
               ) << 8;
// prefetch hits L2
*pmEventSelect3 = 0x02
                             | // Event Set 2
               ((0x01 << 4)) // innerPrefetch_Hit
               ) << 8;
// L1 request misses L2
                            | // Event Set3
*pmEventSelect4 = 0x03
               ( (0x01 << 0) | // outerAcquireBlockNtoB</pre>
                (0x01 << 1) | // outerAcquireBlockNtoT
                (0x01 << 2) | // outerAcquireBlockBtoT
                (0x01 << 3) | // outerAcquirePermNtoT
                (0x01 << 4) // outerAcquirePermBtoT
               ) << 8;
```

12.2.6 Coherence

The SiFive L2 Cache is partially inclusive of the L1 instruction cache and is inclusive of the L1 data cache. When a block of data is allocated to the L1 cache, it is also allocated to the L2 Cache. When a block is evicted from the L1, the corresponding block in the L2 is then updated and marked dirty.

To understand how coherence is managed differently in the L2 Cache with respect to the L1 instruction and data caches, consider the following rules:

- 1. Only an instruction cache allocation from the Memory Port will land in the L2 Cache
- 2. An eviction from the L2 Cache does not cause an eviction from the instruction cache

- 3. An eviction from the instruction cache does not cause L2 Cache eviction either
- 4. A discard from the data cache does not invalidate the L2 Cache
- 5. Following a flush in the L2 Cache, the L2 Cache will back probe lines in L1 data cache

12.3 Memory Map

The L2 Cache Controller memory map is shown in Table 123.

Offset	Name	Description
0×0000	Config	Information about the Cache Configuration
0x0008	WayEnable	The index of the largest way which has been enabled. May
		only be increased.
0x0040	ECCInjectError	Inject an ECC Error
0x0100	DirECCFixLow	The low 32-bits of the most recent address to fail ECC
0x0104	DirECCFixHigh	The high 32-bits of the most recent address to fail ECC
0x0108	DirECCFixCount	Reports the number of times an ECC error occurred
0x0120	DirECCFailLow	The low 32-bits of the most recent address to fail ECC
0x0124	DirECCFailHigh	The high 32-bits of the most recent address to fail ECC
0x0128	DirECCFailCount	Reports the number of times an ECC error occurred
0x0140	DatECCFixLow	The low 32-bits of the most recent address to fail ECC
0x0144	DatECCFixHigh	The high 32-bits of the most recent address to fail ECC
0x0148	DatECCFixCount	Reports the number of times an ECC error occurred
0x0160	DatECCFailLow	The low 32-bits of the most recent address to fail ECC
0x0164	DatECCFailHigh	The high 32-bits of the most recent address to fail ECC
0x0168	DatECCFailCount	Reports the number of times an ECC error occurred
0x0200	Flush64	Flush the physical address equal to the 64-bit written data
		from the cache
0x0240	Flush32	Flush the physical address equal to the 32-bit written data <<
		4 from the cache
0x0800	WayMask0	Master 0 way enable mask register
0x0808	WayMask1	Master 1 way enable mask register
0x0810	WayMask2	Master 2 way enable mask register
0x0818	WayMask3	Master 3 way enable mask register
0x0820	WayMask4	Master 4 way enable mask register
0x0828	WayMask5	Master 5 way enable mask register
0x0830	WayMask6	Master 6 way enable mask register
0x0838	WayMask7	Master 7 way enable mask register
0x0840	WayMask8	Master 8 way enable mask register
0x0848	WayMask9	Master 9 way enable mask register
0x0850	WayMask10	Master 10 way enable mask register
0x0858	WayMask11	Master 11 way enable mask register
0x0860	WayMask12	Master 12 way enable mask register
0x0868	WayMask13	Master 13 way enable mask register
0x0870	WayMask14	Master 14 way enable mask register
0x0878	WayMask15	Master 15 way enable mask register
0x0880	WayMask16	Master 16 way enable mask register
0x0888	WayMask17	Master 17 way enable mask register
0x0890	WayMask18	Master 18 way enable mask register
0x0898	WayMask19	Master 19 way enable mask register
0x08A0	WayMask20	Master 20 way enable mask register

Table 123: L2 Cache Controller Memory Map

Offset	Name	Description
0×1000	FeatureDisable	Composable cache
0x2000	pmEventSelect0	Performance monitor event select 0
0x2008	pmEventSelect1	Performance monitor event select 1
0x2010	pmEventSelect2	Performance monitor event select 2
0x2018	pmEventSelect3	Performance monitor event select 3
0x2020	pmEventSelect4	Performance monitor event select 4
0x2028	pmEventSelect5	Performance monitor event select 5
0x2800	pmClientFilter0	Performance counter client disable mask 0
0x3000	pmEventCounter0	Performance monitor event counter 0
0x3008	pmEventCounter1	Performance monitor event counter 1
0x3010	pmEventCounter2	Performance monitor event counter 2
0x3018	pmEventCounter3	Performance monitor event counter 3
0x3020	pmEventCounter4	Performance monitor event counter 4
0x3028	pmEventCounter5	Performance monitor event counter 5

Table 123: L2 Cache Controller Memory Map

Note that the S76-MC Core Complex does not have ECC enabled on the L2 Cache Controller. The ECC registers are still present but have no effect on hardware nor are they affected by hardware; however, these registers can be manipulated by software.

12.4 Register Descriptions

This section describes the functionality of the memory-mapped registers in the Level 2 Cache Controller.

12.4.1 L2 Cache Configuration Register (Config)

The Config Register can be used to programmatically determine information regarding the cache size and organization.

	L2 Cache Configuration Register (Config)				
Register Offset		0x0			
Bits	Field Name	Attr.	Rst.	Description	
[7:0]	Banks	RO	0x2	Number of banks in the cache	
[15:8]	Ways	RO	0x10	Number of ways per bank	
[23:16]	lgSets	RO	0x8	Base-2 logarithm of the sets per bank	
[31:24]	lgBlockBytes	RO	0x6	Base-2 logarithm of the bytes per cache	
				block	

Table 124: L2 Cache Configuration Register

12.4.2 Way Enable Register (WayEnable)

The WayEnable register determines which ways of the Level 2 Cache Controller are enabled as cache. Cache ways that are not enabled are mapped into the S76-MC Core Complex's L2 LIM (Loosely-Integrated Memory) as described in the memory map in Section 4.2.

This register is initialized to 0 on reset and may only be increased. This means that, out of reset, only a single L2 cache way is enabled, as one cache way must always remain enabled. Once a cache way is enabled, the only way to map it back into the L2 LIM address space is by a reset.

Way Enable Register (WayEnable)					
Register Offset			0x8		
Bits	Field Name	Attr. Rst. Description			
[7:0]	WayEnable	WARL	0×0	The index of the largest way which has	
				been enabled. May only be increased.	

Table 125: Way Enable Register

12.4.3 Cache Flush Registers (Flush*)

The S76-MC Core Complex L2 Cache Controller provides two registers that can be used for flushing specific cache blocks.

Flush64 is a 64-bit write-only register that flushes the cache block containing the address written. Flush32 is a 32-bit write-only register that flushes a cache block containing the written address left shifted by 4 bytes. In both registers, all bits must be written in a single access for the flush to take effect.

The flush operation performs a write-back and invalidate, meaning the contents are written to memory and L2 and L1 cache lines are then invalidated.

12.4.4 Way Mask Registers (WayMask*)

The WayMaskN register allows a master connected to the L2 Cache Controller to specify which L2 Cache ways can be evicted by Master N. Masters can still access memory cached in masked ways. The mapping between masters and their L2 master IDs is shown in Table 127.

At least one cache way must be enabled. It is recommended to set/clear bits in this register using atomic operations.

Way Mask 0 Register (WayMasko)					
Register Offset		0×800			
Bits	Field Name	Attr. Rst. Description		Description	
0	WayMask0_0	RW	0x1	Enable way 0 for Master 0	
1	WayMask0_1	RW	0x1	Enable way 1 for Master 0	
2	WayMask0_2	RW	0x1	Enable way 2 for Master 0	
3	WayMask0_3	RW	0x1	Enable way 3 for Master 0	
4	WayMask0_4	RW	0x1	Enable way 4 for Master 0	
5	WayMask0_5	RW	0x1	Enable way 5 for Master 0	
6	WayMask0_6	RW	0x1	Enable way 6 for Master 0	
7	WayMask0_7	RW	0x1	Enable way 7 for Master 0	
8	WayMask0_8	RW	0x1	Enable way 8 for Master 0	
9	WayMask0_9	RW	0x1	Enable way 9 for Master 0	
10	WayMask0_10	RW	0x1	Enable way 10 for Master 0	
11	WayMask0_11	RW	0x1	Enable way 11 for Master 0	
12	WayMask0_12	RW	0x1	Enable way 12 for Master 0	
13	WayMask0_13	RW	0x1	Enable way 13 for Master 0	
14	WayMask0_14	RW	0x1	Enable way 14 for Master 0	
15	WayMask0_15	RW	0x1	Enable way 15 for Master 0	

Table 126: Way Mask 0 Register

Master ID	Description		
0	Debug		
1	Hart 0 Fetch Unit		
2	Hart 0 D-Cache		
3	Hart 0 L2 Prefetcher		
4	Hart 1 Fetch Unit		
5	Hart 1 D-Cache		
6	Hart 1 L2 Prefetcher		
7	Hart 2 Fetch Unit		
8	Hart 2 D-Cache		
9	Hart 2 L2 Prefetcher		
10	Hart 3 Fetch Unit		
11	Hart 3 D-Cache		
12	Hart 3 L2 Prefetcher		
13	AXI4 Front Port ID#0 [W]		
14	AXI4 Front Port ID#1 [W]		
15	AXI4 Front Port ID#2 [W]		
16	AXI4 Front Port ID#3 [W]		
17	AXI4 Front Port ID#0 [R]		
18	AXI4 Front Port ID#1 [R]		
19	AXI4 Front Port ID#2 [R]		
20 AXI4 Front Port ID#3 [F			

Table 127: Master IDs in the L2 Cache Controller

12.5 Procedure to Flush the L2 Cache

This section describes how to flush the L2 Cache using the Zero Device scratchpad. As the scratchpad resides in the L2 Cache, allocations made to the scratchpad can result in an eviction of a cache line that was allocated from the Memory Port. By controlling the WayMaskN register and targeted scratchpad address, it is possible to perform different flush operations.

As the scratchpad region is cacheable, it is necessary to perform a flush of the scratchpad region used to perform the L2 flush. Otherwise, if the targeted scratchpad line already exists in the L2 Cache, either through a direct access or speculation, it will prevent the desired L2 cache line from being evicted from the Memory Port when it is accessed. The steps outlined below include this necessary flush of the scratchpad region.

For flushing ranges of data, it is recommended to use the flush-by-address function in the L2 Controller space, described in Section 12.4.3.

12.5.1 Flushing a Single Index+Way

- 1. Write WayMaskN to allow evictions from only the desired way
- 2. Issue a FENCE instruction

- 3. Determine address A in the L2 scratchpad region that corresponds to the desired index to be flushed. For example, consider a 2 MiB 16-way cache with the Zero Device located at 0x0A00_000. To target index 8, the valid addresss would be {0x0A00_0200, 0x0A02_0200, 0x0A04_0200, ..., 0x0A1E_0200}.
- 4. Write address A to the L2 Controller Flush64 register
- 5. Issue a load from address A (or a store to address A)
- 6. (Optional) To force observation of the flush, write address A to the L2 Flush64 register and issue a FENCE instruction
- 7. Restore the WayMaskN register to the original value
- 8. Issue a FENCE instruction

12.5.2 Flushing the Entire L2 Cache

- 1. Write WayMaskN to allow evictions from only way 0
- 2. Issue a FENCE instruction
- 3. Flush the first way-size of L2 scratchpad memory using a series of Flush64 operations. For example, consider a 2 MiB 16-way cache with the Zero Device located at 0x0A00_000. 2048 lines (128 KiB) in the region from 0xA000_0000-0xA001_FFC0 must be targeted with a Flush64 operation.
- 4. Issue a FENCE instruction
- 5. Access the first way-size of L2 scratchpad memory using a series of load or store operations that correspond to each index of the L2 Cache. Considering the same cache example (2 MiB, 16-way), all 2048 lines in the region from 0x0A00_0000-0xA001_FFC0 must be accessed. Only one access per 64 B cache line is required. Each scratchpad access will cause an eviction if the corresponding cache index is dirty.
- 6. Issue a FENCE instruction
- 7. Repeat steps 1-6 for the next way to be flushed until all ways have been flushed. The region flushed in step 3 needs to advance by the cache way size, as does the region accessed in step 5. Considering the same example, address range 0xA002_0000-0xA003_FFC0 will be targeted for way 1 operations.
- 8. (Optional) To force observation of the complete flush, repeat steps 3 and 4
- 9. Restore the WayMaskN register to the original value
- Issue a FENCE instruction Memory accesses from harts not performing the flush can interfere with the flush operation. It is recommended to put other harts into WFI or a holding loop until the L2 flush is completed.

Chapter 13

Power Management

The following chapter describes power modes and establishes flows for powering up, powering down, and resetting the hardware of the S76-MC Core Complex.

13.1 Power Modes

Power modes include normal run mode with the Power Dial option and wait-for-interrupt clock gating mode using the WFI instruction. Additionally, there is a full power down mode supported via the CEASE instruction. These modes are covered in detail below.

13.2 Run Mode

The hart is fully operational in run mode, and SiFive designs include the option to include coarse-grained architectural clock gating. When this feature is enabled in the hart, configured instruction cache, data cache, integer pipeline, Debug Logic, and Floating-Point Unit (FPU) modules each contain their own clock gate. The clock gating feature will enable automatic clock gating of functional units when they are inactive and allow the hart to gate its own clock(s) based on activity.

13.2.1 Power Control

Core Clock

To further reduce power while in run mode, users may choose to reduce external_source_for_core_N_clock, which is required to be changed synchronously to the rest of the clocks in the system. It is important to note that the clock relationships with the rest of the system must still be maintained if external_source_for_core_N_clock is reduced. external_source_for_core_N_clock and all other clock signals are described in the S76-MC Core Complex User Guide.

Power Dial

To limit maximum power without frequency changes, Power Dial provides a method of scaling down dynamic power in a core. Power is reduced by restricting cycles allowed to advance

instructions into the execution pipeline. This feature can typically be used for throttling high CPU usage applications.

Power Dial CSR				
CSR	0×7C8			
Bits	Field Name	Attr.	Rst.	Description
[3:0]	dutycycle	RW	0×0	(1 - value/16) portion of the peak instruction throughput (i.e., value=0 is no reduction)
[7:4]	Reserved	RO	0x0	

Table 128: Power Dial CSR

The Power Dial Register may only be programmed in M-mode. When written with a non-zero value, the register restricts peak instruction throughput to the indicated rate. A value of 0 has no effect on instruction throughput. The rate is calculated per 256-cycle period, so a Power Dial value of 1 restricts instruction throughput at a common point in the pipeline to 240 cycles of each 256-cycle period. Reducing the peak rate reduces the worst-case power while minimizing the impact on performance.

13.3 WFI Clock Gate Mode

WFI clock gating mode can be entered by executing the WFI instruction. The assembly-level instruction is simply wfi and executing the C method using the GCC compiler can be accomplished with asm("WFI").

13.3.1 WFI Wake Up

Wake up from a WFI occurs when the hart receives any interrupt. Depending on the software configuration, the hart will either immediately enter the interrupt handler, or resume execution on the instruction immediately after the WFI.

If interrupts are enabled and mstatus.MIE=1, then the hart will wake when an interrupt is enabled and becomes pending, and immediately enter the interrupt handler. Upon exit from the interrupt handler, program execution will resume at the instruction following the WFI.

If interrupts are enabled but mstatus.MIE=0, then the hart will wake when an interrupt is enabled and becomes pending but will not enter the interrupt handler. It will simply resume at the instruction immediately after the WFI in this case.

To prevent an interrupt source from waking a hart, the enable bit for that interrupt must be written to 0 prior to executing the WFI instruction. If any interrupts are pending upon executing a WFI instruction, then the WFI is effectively treated as a NOP instruction.

Refer to Chapter 7 for more detail on interrupt configuration.

13.4 CEASE Instruction for Power Down

To fully power down, follow the steps described in Section 13.11, where the last step is to execute a CEASE instruction. Once the CEASE instruction is executed, the core will not retire another instruction until reset. The CEASE opcode is 0x30500073 and can be implemented in either assembly or C. To create an assembly-level function using GCC, consider the following example.

```
.global _cease
.type _cease, @function
_cease:
    .word 0x30500073
    ret
```

The next example demonstrates how to implement the CEASE instruction within a function in C.

```
static inline void cease()
{
    __asm__ _volatile__ (".word 0x30500073" : : : "memory"); // CEASE
}
```

13.5 Subsystem LowPower Controller (SLPC)

The Subsystem LowPower Controller (SLPC) is a unit inside the uncore that contains power management-related logic.

It includes the CorePowerState register that indicates the individual WFI and CEASE status for up to 16 Tiles in the core-complex.

It is used by core-complex power gating, but can be present when core-complex power gating is not enabled or supported.

Below are the memory map and bitfield definitions for the SLPC:

Location	Description		
base + 0x000	CorePower State Register		
base + 0x008	Reserved		

Table 129: CorePower State Memory Map

CorePower State Register				
Bits	Field	Description		
[15:0]	wfi_ <x></x>	WFI indication from Tile-X, where x is the Tile Index. WFI status for		
		up to 16 Tiles can be captured here.		
[31:16]	cease_ <x></x>	CEASE indication from Tile-X, where x is the Tile Index. CEASE status		
		for up to 16 Tiles can be captured here.		

Table 130: CorePower State Register

13.6 Composable Cache Clock Gating

The Composable Cache implements two levels of architectural clock gating to gate clock nodes when not active, reducing its clock tree and dynamic power.

1. The first level is a trunk clock gate on the entire Composable Cache Wrapper; that is, the clock to the entire module and all its flops is gated. This feature is disabled (i.e., the clock is always enabled) out of reset.

DisableClockGate register bit 0 (DisableWFICCTrunkClockGate) enables the feature during start-up code. The clock gate only becomes active when all the cores in the Core IP subsystem are in WFI mode and the Composable Cache is idle. This saves internal clock tree and Flop's dynamic power in WFI mode. When any of the core is out of WFI mode, the clock is always enabled.

If the feature is enabled, in WFI mode, the clock is only available under the following conditions:

- Activity on the ingress memory bus initiated by any bus master
- Activity on the LIM bus
- Activity on the Composable Cache TileLink control bus

The clock remains available until all the above inflight transactions are finished at the Composable Cache Wrapper boundary.

2. The second level a regional clock gate that gates the clock of some the Composable Cache's major units. This feature is disabled (i.e., the clock is always enabled) out of reset.

DisableClockGate register bit 1 (DisableCCRegionalClockGate) enables the feature during start-up code.

Below are the memory map and bitfield definitions for the DisableClockGate register:

Location	Description	
base + 0x1000	DisableClockGate Register	

Table 131: DisableClockGate Memory Map

	DisableClockGate Register					
Bits	Field	Attr	Reset	Description		
			State			
2	DisableCCRegionalClockGateSlow	RW	0x1	When set, disables regional clock gating "slow" feature. When clear, if regional clock gating is also enabled, the aggressive clock gating feature is enabled. This clock gater imposes a 1-cycle exit penalty from the gated state (on the first TL channel-A request), but saves more power than the no-penalty regional clock gate option.		
1	DisableCCRegionalClockGate	RW	0x1	When set, disables all regional clock gating. When clear, non-aggressive clock gating is enabled. This clock gater has no penalty for exit, but less power savings than regional "slow" clock gating.		
0	DisableWFICCTrunkClockGate	RW	0×1	When set, disables trunk clock gating feature. When clear, dynamic gating of the Ccache clock trunk is enabled. This clock gater incurs a 2-cycle penalty when exiting the WFI clock gated state and saves the most power. All cores in a core-complex must be in WFI before this state is entered.		

Table 132: DisableClockGate Register

Note

To enable the regional clock gating "slow" feature, both bits 1 and 2 need to be cleared.

13.7 Hardware Reset

The following list summarizes the hardware reset values required by *The RISC-V Instruction Set Manual, Volume II: Privileged Architecture, Version 1.11* and applies to all SiFive designs.

1. Privilege mode is set to machine mode.

- 2. mstatus.MIE and mstatus.MPRV are required to be 0.
- 3. The misa register holds the full set of supported extensions for that implementation, and misa.MXL defaults to the widest supported ISA available, referred to as MXLEN.
- 4. The pc is set to the implementation specific reset vector.
- 5. The meause register is set to 0x0 at reset.
- 6. The PMP configuration fields for address matching mode (A) and Lock (L) are set to 0, which defaults to no protection for any privilege level.

The internal state of the rest of the system should be completed by software early in the boot flow.

13.8 Early Boot Flow

For the early stages of boot, some of the first things software must consider are listed below:

- The global pointer (gp or x3) user register should be initialized to the __global_pointer\$ linker generated symbol and not changed at any point in the application program.
- The stack pointer (sp or x2) user register should be also set up as a standard part of the boot flow.
- All other user registers (x1, x4 x31) can be written to 0 upon initial power-on.
- The mtvec register holds the default exception handler base address, so it is important to set up this register early in the boot flow, so it points to a properly aligned, valid exception handler location.
- Zero out the bss section and copy data sections into RAM areas as needed.

13.9 Interrupt State During Early Boot

Since mstatus.MIE defaults to 0, all interrupts are disabled globally out of reset. Prior to enabling interrupts globally through mstatus.MIE, consider the following:

• Ensure no timer interrupts are pending by checking the mip.MTIP bit. The mtime register is 0 out of reset and starts running immediately. However, the mtimecmp register does not have a reset value.

If no timer interrupt is required, leave mie.MTIE equal to 0 prior to enabling global interrupt with mstatus.MIE.

If the application requires a timer interrupt, write mtimecmp to a value in the future for the next timer interrupt before enabling mstatus.MIE.

• Write the remaining bits in the mie CSR to the desired value to enable interrupts based on the requirements of the system. This register is not defined to have a reset value.

- Each msip register in the Core-Local Interruptor (CLINT) or Core-Local Interrupt Controller (CLIC) address space is reset to 0, so no specific initialization is required for local software interrupts.
 - Since msip is memory-mapped, any hart in the system may trigger a software interrupt on another hart, so this should be considered during the boot flow on a multi-hart system.
- If a Platform-Level Interrupt Controller (PLIC) exists, check the PLIC pending status. The PLIC memory mapped pending bits are read-only, so the pending status should be cleared at the source if they reset to a non-zero status. Then, enable the PLIC interrupts as required by the system prior to enabling interrupts in the system via mstatus.MIE.

If an L2 Cache or Bus-Error Unit (BEU) is present, these interrupt IDs begin at 128, so the enable bits may lie in a different region of the memory map than other PLIC enable bits in the design.

13.10 Other Boot Time Considerations

- Write 0 to enable the appropriate bits in the Feature Disable CSR as described in Section 6.2.2.
- Ensure the remaining bits in the mstatus CSR are written to the desired application specific configuration at boot time.
- If a design includes user and supervisor privilege levels, initialize medeleg and mideleg registers to 0 until supervisor-level trap handling is set up correctly using stvec.
- The mcause, mepc, and mtval registers hold important information in the event of a synchronous exception. If the synchronous exception handler forces reset in the application, the contents of these registers can be checked to understand root cause.
- The PMP address and configuration CSRs are required to be initialized if user or supervisor privilege levels are part of the design. By default, user and supervisor modes have no permissions to the memory map unless explicitly granted by the PMP.
- The mcycle CSR is a 64-bit counter on both RV32 and RV64 systems, and it counts the number of cycles executed by the hart. It has an arbitrary value after reset and can be written as needed by the application.
- Instructions retired can be counted by the minstret register, and this also has an arbitrary value after reset. This can be written to any given value.
- The mhpmeventX CSR selects which hardware events to count, where the count is reflected in mhpmcounterX. At any point, the mhpmcounterX registers can be directly written to reset their value when the mhpmeventX register has the proper event selected.
- There is no requirement for boot time initialization to any of the registers within the Debug Module, unless there is an application specific reason to do so.
- All other CSRs during boot time initialization should be considered based on system and application requirements.

13.11 Power-Down Flow

Designate one core as "primary" and all others as "secondary". For SiFive Core IP, coordination with an "External Agent" is required.

- 1. External Agent: Wait for communication from the primary core to initiate the following steps:
 - a. Stop sending inbound traffic (both transactions and interrupts) into the Core Complex.
 - b. Wait until all outstanding requests to the Core Complex are completed, then
 - c. Wait until cease_from_tile_N is high for the primary core and all secondary cores.
 - d. Once cease_from_tile_N is high for the primary core and all secondary cores, apply reset to the entire Core Complex.

2. Primary core:

- a. The following sequence should be executed in machine mode and NOT out of a remote ITIM/DTIM.
- b. Communicate with external agent to initiate cease power-down sequence.
- c. Poll external agent until steps 1.a and 1.b are completed.
- d. Disable all interrupts except those related to bus errors/memory corruption, and IPIs (if using enabled IPI to coordinate power-down sequence among cores).
 - i. Copy contents of any TIMs/LIMs into external memory.
 - ii. If there is an L2 cache, flush it.
 - iii. If there is no L2 cache, but there is a data cache, flush it.
- e. Inform all secondary cores to proceed.
- f. Wait until cease_from_tile_N is high for all secondary cores. Examples of how this can be accomplished:
 - i. Have an off-core-complex memory-mapped register that tracks the state of the cease_from_tile_N signals. Primary core polls this register.
 - ii. Wire the cease_from_tile_N signals back into interrupt wires. Corresponding interrupts can be disabled along with all others in the first step. Primary core polls the interrupt-pending bits for those interrupts.
- g. Disable all interrupts.
- h. Execute CEASE instruction.

3. Secondary cores:

a. The following sequence should be executed in machine mode and NOT out of a remote ITIM/DTIM.

- b. Execute in an idle loop for notification sent in step 2.e (could be via polling on an MMIO-accessible mailbox, polling on an IPI (disabled), or waiting on an IPI (enabled)).
- c. Disable all interrupts except those related to bus errors/memory corruption, and IPIs (if using enabled IPI to coordinate power-down sequence among cores).
- d. Copy contents of any TIMs/LIMs into external memory.
- e. If there is no L2 cache but there is a data cache, flush it using full-cache variant of CFLUSH.D.L1 if available, or per-line variant if not.
- f. Disable all interrupts.
- g. Execute CEASE instruction.

Chapter 14

Debug

This chapter describes the operation of SiFive debug hardware, which follows *The RISC-V Debug Specification, Version 1.0.* Currently, only interactive debug and hardware breakpoints are supported.

14.1 Debug Module

The Debug Module (DM) handles nearly all of the functions related to debugging. It is a slave to both the Debug Module Interface (DMI) coming from the probe, and a TileLink bus coming from the cores. From the perspective of the core, the DM appears as a 4KiB block in the memory map. The DM memory map as seen from the perspective of the core is shown in Table 134, and the register map from the perspective of the DMI is shown in Table 133.

Most of the DM is clocked by debug_clock. The dmcontrol register is accessible when debug_clock is not running, mainly to be able to write to haltreq while the core is in reset due to ndreset. Doing so generates a debug interrupt and will interrupt the selected core immediately once it is out of reset or during a WFI instruction.

DMI Address	Name	Description
0x04-0x0F	data0-data11	Read/Write DATA registers. 32-bit SiFive cores have 1 data register, 64-bit cores have 2. Note that
		these registers are volatile and may be masked in IP-XACT.
0x10	dmcontrol	Debug Module Control. See Table 145 for more information.
0x11	dmstatus	Debug Module Status. See Table 144 for more information.
0x12	hartinfo	Hart Information. See Table 146 for more information.
0x13	haltsum1	Read-only. Halt Summary 1. Only present on systems with >32 harts. Not used by SiFive .
0x14	hawindowsel	Read/Write. Select which window of up to 32 harts is visible in hawindow. Not used by SiFive since all SiFive systems have less than 32 harts.
0x15	hawindow	Read/Write. Window of 32 harts to be selected, in addition to the one selected by hartsel. Bit 0 corresponds to hart 0. A 1 will select the corresponding hart.
0x16	abstractcs	Abstract Control and Status. See Table 147 for more information.
0x17	command	Initiate abstract command. See Table 148 for more information.
0x18	abstractauto	Selects whether access to particular DATA or PROGBUF locations will re-execute the last command. Used for block transfers or other repeating commands. See Table 149 for more information.
0x20-0x2F	progbuf0-progbuf15	Read/Write PROGBUF registers.
0x32	dmcs2	Fields to set up and read back Halt Group or Resume Group configuration. Present by default on systems with more than 1 hart or with any external triggers. See Table 150 for more information.
0x38	sbcs	System Bus Access Control and Status
0x39	sbaddress0	System Bus Address 31:0
0x3A	sbaddress1	System Bus Address 63:32.
0x3C	sbdata0	System Bus Data 31:0
0x3D	sbdata1	System Bus Data 63:32
0x40	haltsum0	Read-only. Halt Summary 0. Bit n reads 1 if hart n is halted. Note that this register is volatile and may be masked in IP-XACT.

 Table 133:
 Debug Module Memory Map Seen from the Debug Module Interface

From the point of view of the core, the DM appears as a 4KiB block of memory. It is mapped into low memory so that memory references can use addresses relative to the \$zero register.

TL Address	Name	Attr.	Description
0x100	HALTED	WO	Written with hartid by ROM code when hart gets a debug interrupt or reenters ROM due to EBREAK. Sets halted[hartid]. If an abstract command was running, writing this also clears busy.
0x104	GOING	WO	Written by ROM code when it begins executing a command started by FLAGS[hartid].go. Clears FLAGS[hartid].go.
0×108	RESUMING	WO	Written with hartid by hart when it is about to resume. Sets resumeack[hartid] and clears halted[hartid] and FLAGS[hartid].resume.
0x10C	EXCEPTION	WO	Written by hart when it encounters an exception in debug mode. Sets cmderr to "exception".
0×300	WHERETO	RO	JAL to ABSTRACT. This opcode is constructed by DM hardware and is needed because ABSTRACT is not a fixed address (depends on number of PROGBUF words selected in the configuration). Note that ABSTRACT is volatile and may be masked in IP-XACT.
contiguous	ABSTRACT	RO	2 words constructed by DM hardware based on abstract command written from DTM.
			 0 - If transfer set, construct instruction to load/ store specific register to/from DATA[0] (32 bits) or DATA[1:0] (64 bits), else NOP.
			 4 - If postexec set, then NOP to fall thru and execute PROGBUF, else EBREAK to return to ROM park loop.
			Note that this register is volatile and may be masked in IP-XACT.
contiguous	PROGBUF	RW	Configurable number (typically 16, max 16) of R/W words to be filled in by debugger and executed by hart. Note that this register is volatile and may be masked in IP-XACT.
0x380-0x3BF	DATA	RW	Configurable number (1 for 32-bit or 2 for 64-bit, max 12) of R/W words intended for use for data transfer between debugger and hart. Since it is contiguous with PROGBUF, the debugger may use DATA as an extension of PROGBUF. Note that these registers are volatile and may be masked in IP-XACT.
0x400-0x7FF	FLAGS	RO	One byte flag per hart. Bit 0 (go): Set by writing an abstract command, cleared by ROM write to GOING. ROM will jump to WHERETO.

 Table 134:
 Debug Module Memory Map from the Perspective of the Core

TL Address	Name	Attr.	Description
			Bit 1 (resume): Set by writing 1 to resumereq[hartid]. Cleared by ROM write of hartid to RESUMING. ROM restores s0 then executes dret.
			Note that these registers are volatile and may be masked in IP-XACT.
0x800-0xFFF	ROM	RO	Debug interrupt or EBREAK enters at 0x800, saves s0, writes hartid to HALTED, then busy-waits for FLAGS[hartid] > 0.
			If FLAGS[hartid].go, write 0 to GOING, then jump to WHERETO.
			Else write hartid to RESUMING, then execute dret to return to user program.
			ROM Source Code: https://github.com/chipsalliance/ rocket-chip/blob/master/scripts/debug_rom/ debug_rom.S

Table 134: Debug Module Memory Map from the Perspective of the Core

14.2 Debug and Trigger Registers

This section describes the per hart debug and trigger registers, which are mapped into the CSR space as follows:

CSR	Name	Allowed Access Mode	Description
0x7B0	dcsr	Debug	Debug Control and Status Register
0×7B1	dpc	Debug	Debug PC. Stores execution address just before debug exception and to return to at dret.
0x7B2	dscratch0	Debug	Debug Scratch Register 0
0×7A0	tselect	Debug, Machine	Trigger Select. Most configs implement 2, 4, or 8 triggers. Triggers are all type 6 (address/data).
0x7A1	tdata1	Debug, Machine	Trigger Data 1, mcontrol6
0x7A2	tdata2	Debug, Machine	Trigger Data 2, the address for comparison
0x7A3	tdata3	Debug, Machine	Trigger Data 3

Table 135: Debug and Trigger Registers

14.2.1 Debug Control and Status Register (dcsr)

This register gives information about debug capabilities and status. Its detailed functionality is described in *The RISC-V Debug Specification, Version 1.0*.

	Debug Control and Status Register (dcsr)			
CSR			0×7B0	
Bits	Field Name	Attr.	Description	
[1:0]	prv	RW	Privilege level of processor prior to debug exception and to return to at dret.	
2	step	RW	Set to 0x1 to single-step.	
3	nmip	RO	Non-maskable interrupt pending. Not used by SiFive.	
4	mprven	WARL	Not used by SiFive.	
5	Reserved			
[8:6]	cause	RO	Indicates cause of most recent debug exception.	
9	stoptime	WARL	0x1 will stop timers in debug mode. Not used by SiFive (timers continue).	
10	stopcount	WARL	0x1 will stop counters in debug mode. Not used by SiFive (counters continue).	
11	stepie	WARL	Enable interrupts when stepping. Not used by SiFive (interrupts disabled).	
12	ebreaku	RW	EBREAK instructions in U-mode enter debug mode (vs. breakpoint exception).	
13	ebreaks	RW	EBREAK instructions in S-mode enter debug mode.	
14	Reserved			
15	ebreakm	RW	EBREAK instructions in M-mode enter debug mode.	
[27:16]	Reserved			
[31:28]	xdebugver	RO	Version	

Table 136: Debug Control and Status Register

14.2.2 Debug PC (dpc)

When entering debug mode, the current PC is copied here. When leaving debug mode, execution resumes at this PC.

14.2.3 Debug Scratch (dscratch)

This register is generally reserved for use by Debug ROM in order to save registers needed by the code in Debug ROM. The debugger may use it as described in *The RISC-V Debug Specification, Version 1.0*.

14.2.4 Trigger Select Register (tselect)

To support a large and variable number of triggers for tracing and breakpoints, they are accessed through one level of indirection where the tselect register selects which bank of three tdata1-3 registers are accessed via the other three addresses.

The tselect register has the format shown below:

Trigger Select Register (tselect)			
CSR	0x7A0		
Bits	Field Name	Attr.	Description
[63:0]	index	WARL	Selection index of triggers

Table 137: Trigger Select Register

The index field is a **WARL** field that does not hold indices of unimplemented triggers. Even if index can hold a trigger index, it does not guarantee the trigger exists. The type field of tdata1 must be inspected to determine whether the trigger exists.

14.2.5 Trigger Data Registers (tdata1-3)

The tdata1-3 registers are 64-bit read/write registers selected from a larger underlying bank of triggers by the tselect register.

	Trigger Data Register 1 (tdata1)			
CSR			0x7A1	
Bits	Field Name	Attr.	Description	
[58:0]		Trig	ger-Specific Data	
59	dmode	WARL	Selects between debug mode (dmode=1) and machine mode (dmode=0) views of the registers, where only debug mode code can access the debug mode view of the triggers	
[63:60]	type	WARL	The type of trigger selected by tselect • 0x0 - No such trigger • 0x1-0x5 - Reserved • 0x6 - Address/Data Match Trigger • ≥0x7 - Reserved	

Table 138: Trigger Data Register 1

Trigger Data Registers 2 and 3 (tdata2/3)				
CSR	0x7A2 - 0x7A3			
Bits	Field Name Attr. Description			
[63:0]		Trigger-Specific Data		

Table 139: Trigger Data Registers 2 and 3

Any attempt to read/write the tdata1-3 registers in machine mode when TSELECT.dmode=1 raises an illegal-instruction exception.

14.3 Breakpoints

The S76-MC Core Complex supports four hardware breakpoint registers per hart, which can be flexibly shared between debug mode and machine mode.

When a breakpoint register is selected with tselect, the other CSRs access the following information for the selected breakpoint:

CSR Name	Breakpoint Alias	Description
tselect	tselect	Breakpoint selection index
tdata1	mcontrol6	Breakpoint match control
tdata2	maddress	Breakpoint match address
tdata3	N/A	Reserved

Table 140: Trigger CSRs When Used as Breakpoints

14.3.1 Breakpoint Match Control Register (mcontrol6)

Each breakpoint control register is a read/write register laid out in Table 141. This register is accessible as tdata1 when type is 0x2.

	Breakpoint Match Control Register (mcontrol6)				
CSR	•	0x7A1			
Bits	Field Name	Attr.	Rst.	Description	
0	R	WARL	0×0	Address match on load	
1	W	WARL	0×0	Address match on store	
2	Х	WARL	0×0	Address match on instruction fetch	
3	U	WARL	Х	Address match on user mode	
4	S	WARL	Х	Address match on supervisor mode	
5	Reserved	WPRI	Х		
6	М	WARL	Х	Address match on machine mode	
[10:7]	match	WARL	Х	Breakpoint Address Match type	
				0x0 - Single address	
				0x1 - Power-of-2 range, limited to 64 bytes in SiFive implementations	
				• 0x2 - ≥ address	
				• 0x3 - < address	
				Others not supported by SiFive	
11	chain	WARL	0×0	Chain adjacent conditions. When set, this trigger and the next must match at the same time to fire. Typically used for a range breakpoint using 2 triggers, one with match=0x2 and one with match=0x3. This is not a sequential trigger.	
[15:12]	action	WARL	0×0	Breakpoint action to take	
[19:16]	size	WARL	0×0	Size of the breakpoint. Fixed at 0, meaning accesses of any size that cover any part of the trigger address range will fire.	
20	timing	WARL	0x0	Timing of the breakpoint. Fixed at 0, meaning breaks happen just before the event.	
21	select	WARL	0×0	Perform match on address or data. Fixed at 0, meaning all triggers compare addresses only (no data value).	
[58:22]	Reserved				
59	dmode	RW	0×0	Debug-only access mode	
[63:60]	type	RO	0x6	Address/Data match type, always 0x6	

 Table 141:
 Breakpoint Match Control Register

The type field is a 4-bit read-only field holding the value 0x2 to indicate this is a breakpoint containing address match logic.

The action field is a 4-bit read-write **WARL** field that specifies the available actions when the address match is successful. The value 0 generates a breakpoint exception. The value 1 enters debug mode. Other actions are not implemented.

The R/W/X bits are individual **WARL** fields, and if set, indicate an address match should only be successful for loads, stores, and instruction fetches, respectively. All combinations of implemented bits must be supported.

The M/S/U bits are individual **WARL** fields, and if set, indicate that an address match should only be successful in the machine, supervisor and user modes, respectively. All combinations of implemented bits must be supported.

The match field is a 4-bit read-write **WARL** field that encodes the type of address range for breakpoint address matching. Three different match settings are currently supported: exact, NAPOT, and arbitrary range. A single breakpoint register supports both exact address matches and matches with address ranges that are naturally aligned powers-of-two (NAPOT) in size. Breakpoint registers can be paired to specify arbitrary exact ranges, with the lower-numbered breakpoint register giving the byte address at the bottom of the range and the higher-numbered breakpoint register giving the address 1 byte above the breakpoint range and using the chain bit to indicate both must match for the action to be taken.

NAPOT ranges make use of low-order bits of the associated breakpoint address register to encode the size of the range as follows:

maddress	Match Type and Size
aaaaaaa	Exactly 1 byte
aaaaaa0	2-byte NAPOT range
aaaaa01	4-byte NAPOT range
aaaa011	8-byte NAPOT range
aaa0111	16-byte NAPOT range
aa01111	32-byte NAPOT range
a011111	2 ³¹ -byte NAPOT range

Table 142: NAPOT Size Encoding

maskmax6 determines the largest supported NAPOT range. The value of maskmax6 is the logarithm base 2 of the number of bytes in the largest supported NAPOT range. A value of 0 indicates that only exact address matches are supported (1-byte range). A value of 31 corresponds to the maximum NAPOT range, which is 2^{31} bytes in size. The largest range is encoded in maddress with the 30 least-significant bits set to 1, bit 30 set to 0, and bit 31 holding the only address bit considered in the address comparison.

The value of maskmax6 is not directly observable, but can be determined via the following sequence:

- 1. Set match to 1 to select NAPOT mode
- 2. Read match. If the returned value is not 1, then NAPOT matching is not supported.
- 3. Write all ones to tdata2
- 4. Read tdata2. The value of maskmax6 is one more than the index of the most-significant zero bit. For example, if the read value is 0xFFFF_FFF7, bit 3 is zero, so maskmax6 is 4.

To provide breakpoints on an exact range, two neighboring breakpoints can be combined with the chain bit. The first breakpoint can be set to match on an address using action of 2 (greater than or equal). The second breakpoint can be set to match on address using action of 3 (less than). Setting the chain bit on the first breakpoint prevents the second breakpoint from firing unless they both match.

Note

When a chain includes both instruction trigger and data address trigger, the breakpoint does not fire. To work around this limitation, set a data trigger on any access to the data item. Then, in the GDB breakpoint command script, check whether the PC is the one you want and restart if not.

14.3.2 Breakpoint Match Address Register (maddress)

Each breakpoint match address register is a 64-bit read/write register used to hold significant address bits for address matching and also the unary-encoded address masking information for NAPOT ranges.

14.3.3 Breakpoint Execution

Breakpoint traps are taken precisely. Implementations that emulate misaligned accesses in software will generate a breakpoint trap when either half of the emulated access falls within the address range. Implementations that support misaligned accesses in hardware must trap if any byte of an access falls within the matching range.

Debug mode breakpoint traps jump to the debug trap vector without altering machine mode registers.

Machine mode breakpoint traps jump to the exception vector with "Breakpoint" set in the mcause register and with badaddr holding the instruction or data address that caused the trap.

14.3.4 Sharing Breakpoints Between Debug and Machine Mode

When debug mode uses a breakpoint register, it is no longer visible to machine mode (that is, the tdrtype will be 0). Typically, a debugger will leave the breakpoints alone until it needs them, either because a user explicitly requested one or because the user is debugging code in ROM.

14.4 Debug Memory Map

This section describes the Debug Module's memory map when accessed via the regular system interconnect. The Debug Module is only accessible to debug code running in debug mode on a hart (or via a Debug Transport Module). The following addresses are offsets from the base address of the Debug Module. Note that the PMP must allow M-mode access to the Debug Module address range for debugging to be possible.

14.4.1 Debug RAM and Program Buffer (0x300-0x3FF)

The S76-MC Core Complex has 16 32-bit words of program buffer for the debugger to direct a hart to execute arbitrary RISC-V code. Its location in memory can be determined by executing aiupc instructions and storing the result into the program buffer.

The S76-MC Core Complex has two 32-bit words of debug data RAM. Its location can be determined by reading the DM.hartinfo register, as described in *The RISC-V Debug Specification*, *Version 1.0*. This RAM space is used to pass data for the Access Register abstract command, as described in *The RISC-V Debug Specification*, *Version 1.0*. The S76-MC Core Complex supports only general-purpose register access when harts are halted. All other commands must be implemented by executing from the debug program buffer.

In the S76-MC Core Complex, both the program buffer and debug data RAM are general-purpose RAM and are mapped contiguously in the Core Complex memory space. Therefore, additional data can be passed in the program buffer, and additional instructions can be stored in the debug data RAM.

Debuggers must not execute program buffer programs that access any Debug Module memory except defined program buffer and debug data addresses.

14.4.2 Debug ROM (0x800-0xFFF)

This ROM region holds the debug routines on SiFive systems. The actual total size may vary between implementations.

14.4.3 Debug Flags (0x100-0x110, 0x400-0x7FF)

The flag registers in the Debug Module are used for the Debug Module to communicate with each hart. These flags are set and read used by the debug ROM and should not be accessed by any program buffer code. The specific behavior of the flags is not further documented here.

14.4.4 Safe Address

In the S76-MC Core Complex, the Debug Module contains the Debug Module address range in the memory map. Memory accesses to these addresses raise access exceptions, unless the hart is in debug mode. This property allows a "safe" location for unprogrammed parts, as the default mtvec location is 0x0.

14.5 Debug Module Interface

The SiFive Debug Module (DM) conforms to *The RISC-V Debug Specification, Version 1.0.* A debug probe or agent connects to the Debug Module through the Debug Module Interface (DMI). The following sections describe notable spec options used in the implementation and should be read in conjunction with *The RISC-V Debug Specification, Version 1.0*.

DMI is a simple read/write bus whose master is the DTM (if it exists, otherwise DMI passes through to customer logic) and whose slave is the Debug Module. The master sends a request to the slave and the slave responds with a response. A request is considered sent if req_ready=1 indicating the master is sending a request and req_valid=1 indicating the slave is accepting the request on this cycle. Similarly, the response is sent when both resp_valid=1 indicating the slave is sending a response and resp_ready=1 indicating the master is accepting it.

Note

It is the responsibility of the debugger to simulate virtual address accesses by accessing the page tables directly, then sending the translated physical address to hardware when doing the access.

Note

The Debug Module registers are not directly accessible from the core.

Group	Signal	Source	Description		
	clock	system	All signals timed to this clock. With JTAG DTM, this		
System			clock is the JTAG TCK.		
	reset	system	Synchronous reset. Generated by power-on reset		
			circuit.		
	req_ready	slave	Slave ready to receive request.		
	req_valid	master	Master's request valid.		
	req_addr	master	Configurable width address bus. 0x7 for SiFive.		
Doguest	req_data	master	32-bit write data bus.		
Request Bus	req_op	master	• 0x0 = None		
Dus			• 0x1 = Read		
			• 0x2 = Write		
			0x3 = Reserved		
	resp_ready	master	Master is ready to receive response.		
	resp_valid	slave	Slave response is valid.		
	resp_data	slave	32-bit read data bus.		
Response	resp_op	slave	0x0 = Success		
Bus			• 0x1 = Failure		
			0x2 = Not used		
			• 0x3 = Reserved		

Table 143: Debug Module Interface Signals

14.5.1 Debug Module Status Register (dmstatus)

dmstatus holds the DM version number and other implementation information. Most importantly, it contains status bits that indicate the current state of the selected hart(s).

Debug Module Status Register (dmstatus)						
	DMI Address 0x11					
Bits	Field Name	Attr.	Rst.	Description		
[3:0]	version	RO	0x3	Implementation version number		
4	Reserved	RO	0x0			
5	hasresethaltreq	RO	0x1	1 if resethaltreq exists		
[7:6]	Reserved	RO	0x0			
8	anyhalted	RO	0x0	Any currently selected hart is halted. Note that this field is volatile and may be masked in IP-XACT.		
9	allhalted	RO	0x0	All currently selected harts are halted. Note that this field is volatile and may be masked in IP-XACT.		
10	anyrunning	RO	0x1	Any currently selected hart is running. Note that this field is volatile and may be masked in IP-XACT.		
11	allrunning	RO	0x1	All currently selected harts are running. Note that this field is volatile and may be masked in IP-XACT.		
12	anyunavail	RO	0×0	Any currently selected hart is not available (i.e., is powered down). DM supports it, but not currently used by SiFive cores Note that this field is volatile and may be masked in IP-XACT.		
13	allunavail	RO	0×0	All currently selected harts are not available (i.e., is powered down). DM supports it, but not currently used by SiFive cores. Note that this field is volatile and may be masked in IP-XACT.		
14	anynonexistent	RO	0x0	Any currently selected hart does not exist in the system. Note that this field is volatile and may be masked in IP-XACT.		
15	allnonexistent	RO	0x0	All currently selected harts do not exist in the system. Note that this field is volatile and may be masked in IP-XACT.		
16	anyresumeack	RO	0x1	Any currently selected hart has resumed execution. Note that this field is volatile and may be masked in IP-XACT.		
17	allresumeack	RO	0x1	All currently selected harts have resumed execution. Note that this field		

 Table 144:
 Debug Module Status Register

				is volatile and may be masked in IP-XACT.
18	anyhavereset	RO	0×0	Any currently selected hart has been reset, but reset has not been acknowledged. Note that this field is volatile and may be masked in IP-XACT.
19	allhavereset	RO	0×0	All currently selected harts have been reset, but reset has not been acknowledged. Note that this field is volatile and may be masked in IP-XACT.
[21:20]	Reserved	RO	0×0	
22	impebreak	RO	0x0	1 if PROGBUF is followed by implicit EBREAK. Generally, 1 for E2 cores, 0 otherwise.
[31:23]	Reserved	RO	0×0	

Table 144: Debug Module Status Register

14.5.2 Debug Module Control Register (dmcontrol)

A debugger performs most hart controls through the dmcontrol register.

	Debug Module Control Register (dmcontrol)				
D	MI Address	0x10			
Bits	Field Name	Attr.	Rst.	Description	
0	dmactive	RW	0×0	O disables the DM and sets DMI registers to their reset state, 1 puts the DM in operational mode. Drives dmactive output that could be used by a system power controller to maintain power to the DM while it is being used. When 1, dmcontrol should be read back until dmactive=1, which indicates that the Debug Module is fully operational. When 0, the DM TileLink clock is gated off to save power.	
1	ndmreset	RW	0x0	Write 1 to reset system (assert ndreset output). Write 0 to operate normally.	
2	clrresethaltreq	WO	0x0	Write 1 to clear the reset-halt-request bit	
3	setresethaltreq	WO	0×0	When written to 1, the core will halt upon the next deassertion of its reset	
[15:4]	Reserved	RO	0x0		
[25:16]	hartsel	RW	0×0	Selects the hart to operate on	
26	hasel	RW	0x0	Selects hart(s) in the hart-array mask register (hawindow)	
27	Reserved	RO	0x0		
28	ackhavereset	WO	0x0	Write 1 to acknowledge that a reset occurred on the selected hart	
29	Reserved	RO	0x0		
30	resumereq	WO	0×0	Write 1 to request selected hart to resume, cleared to 0 automatically when hart resumes	
31	haltreq	RW	0x0	Write 1 to request selected hart to halt. Generates debug interrupt to the core. Write 0 once halted has been set by the DM.	

Table 145: Debug Module Control Register

14.5.3 Hart Info Register (hartinfo)

hartinfo contains information about the currently selected hart.

Hart Info Register (hartinfo)					
D	MI Address			0x12	
Bits	Field Name	Attr.	Rst.	Description	
[11:0]	dataaddr	RO	0x380	Address of DATA registers in hart memory map. 0x380 for SiFive.	
[15:12]	datasize	RO	0x2	Number of DATA registers. 0x1 for 32-bit, 0x2 for 64-bit SiFive cores.	
16	dataaccess	RO	0x1	DATA registers are shadowed in the hart memory map. 1 for SiFive.	
[19:17]	Reserved	RO	0x0		
[23:20]	nscratch	RO	0x1	Number of dscratch registers available for debugger. 1 for SiFive.	
[31:24]	Reserved	RO	0x0		

Table 146: Hart Info Register

14.5.4 Hart Array Window Register (hawindow)

This register contains a bitmap where bit 0 corresponds to hart 0, bit 1 to hart 1, etc. Any bits set in this register select the corresponding hart in addition to the hart selected by dmcontrol.hartsel.

14.5.5 Abstract Control and Status Register (abstractcs)

Abstract Control and Status Register (abstractcs)					
D	MI Address			0x16	
Bits	Field Name	Attr.	Rst.	Description	
[3:0]	datacount	RO	0x2	Number of DATA registers. 0x1 for 32-bit, 0x2 for 64-bit SiFive cores.	
[7:4]	Reserved	RO	0x0		
[10:8]	cmderr	RW1C	0×0	Non-zero value indicates an abstract command error. Remains set until cleared by writing all ones. If set, no abstract commands are accepted.	
				0x0 - No error	
				0x1 - Busy. Abstract command or register was accessed while command was running.	
				 0x2 - Not supported. Abstract command type not supported by hardware was attempted. 	
				0x3 - Exception. An exception occurred during execution of an abstract command.	
				0x4 - Halt/resume. Abstract command attempted while hart was running or unavailable.	
				 0x5 - Bus. Bus error occurred during abstract command. Not used by SiFive. 	
				 0x7 - Other. Abstract command failed for another reason. Not used by SiFive. 	
				Note that this field is volatile and may be masked in IP-XACT.	
11	Reserved	RO	0x0		
12	busy	RO	0×0	Reads as 1 while Abstract command is running, 0 if not. Note that this field is volatile and may be masked in IP-XACT.	
[23:13]	Reserved	RO	0x0		
[28:24]	progbufsize	RO	0x10	Number of 32-bit words in PROGBUF. S76-MC Core Complex has 16 words.	
[31:29]	Reserved	RO	0x0		

 Table 147:
 Abstract Control and Status Register

14.5.6	Abstract	Command	Register	(command))
--------	-----------------	---------	----------	-----------	---

	Abstract Command Register (command)				
	OMI Address		0x17		
Bits	Field Name	Attr.	Description		
[15:0]	regno	RW	Select which register to read/write. SiFive only supports GPRs: 0x1000-0x101F.		
16	write	RW	1=write register, 0=read register. Only done if transfer=1.		
17	transfer	RW	1=do the register read/write, 0=don't.		
18	postexec	RW	1=execute PROGBUF after the command, 0=don't.		
19	aarpostincrement	RW	Not supported by SiFive.		
[22:20]	aarsize	RW	0x2, 0x3, 0x4 select 32, 64, 128 bits, respectively.		
23	Reserved	RO			
[31:24]	cmdtype	RW	0=Access Register is the only type supported by SiFive.		

Table 148: Abstract Command Register

Note that this register is volatile and may be masked in IP-XACT.

14.5.7 Abstract Command Autoexec Register (abstractauto)

	Abstract Command Autoexec Register (abstractauto)				
D	MI Address			0x18	
Bits	Field Name	Attr.	Rst.	Description	
[11:0]	autoexecdata	RW	0x0	Bitmap of DATA registers [11:0]. 1 indicates DATA access initiates command.	
[15:12]	Reserved	RO	0×0		
[31:16]	autoexecprogbuf	RW	0x0	Bitmap of PROGBUF words [15:0]. 1 indicates PROGBUF access initiates command.	

Table 149: Abstract Command Autoexec Register

14.5.8 Debug Module Control and Status 2 Register (dmcs2)

Table 150 describes the Debug Module Control and Status 2 Register dmcs2. If halt/resume groups are not implemented, then group will always read back as 0. The Debug Module external triggers may be allocated as needed between halt and resume groups.

	Debug Module Control and Status 2 Register (dmcs2)				
D	MI Address			0x32	
Bits	Field Name	Attr.	Rst.	Description	
0	hgselect	RW	0×0	0=operate on harts, 1=operate on external triggers.	
1	hgwrite	WO	Х	When written with 1, the selected harts or external trigger is assigned to group group.	
[6:2]	group	RW	0×0	Specify the halt group or resume group number that the selected harts or external triggers will be assigned to. Note that this field is volatile and may be masked in IP-XACT.	
[10:7]	Reserved	RO	0x0		
11	grouptype	RW	0x0	0=operate on Halt Group configuration, 1=operate on Resume Group configuration.	
[31:12]	Reserved	RO	0x0		

Table 150: Debug Module Control and Status 2 Register

14.5.9 Abstract Commands

Abstract commands provide a debugger with a path to read and write processor state and are used for extracting and modifying processor state such as registers and memory. Register so is saved by the ROM and is available for use by the abstract command code. An abstract command is started by the debugger writing to command. In command, the debugger selects whether to load/store a register, execute PROGBUF, or both. Only GPR register transfers are supported currently. Many aspects of Abstract Commands are optional in *The RISC-V Debug Specification, Version 1.0* and are implemented as described below.

cmdtype	Feature	Support
Access Register	GPR registers	Access Register command, register number
		0x1000 - 0x101F
	CSR registers	Not supported. CSRs are accessed using the
		Program Buffer.
	FPU registers	Not supported. FPU registers are accessed
		using the Program Buffer.
	Autoexec	Both autoexecprogbuf and autoexecdata
		are supported.
	Post-increment	Not supported.
	Core Register	Not supported.
	Access	
Quick Access		Not supported.
Access Memory		Not supported. Memory access is
		accomplished using the Program Buffer.

Table 151: Debug Abstract Commands

The use of abstract commands is outlined in the following example, describing how to read a word of target memory:

- 1. The debugger writes opcodes to PROGBUF to accomplish the desired function.
- 2. The debugger writes the desired memory address to DATA[0].
- 3. The debugger requests an abstract command specifying to load so from DATA[0], then execute PROGBUF. Writing to command while hart n is selected has the side effect of setting FLAGS[n]. go. Writing to command also sets busy which is readable from the debugger, and indicates that an abstract command is in progress.
- 4. The ROM busy-wait loop being executed by hart n sees FLAGS[n].go set.
- 5. ROM code writes 0 to GOING which has the effect of clearing FLAGS[n].go.
- 6. ROM code jumps to WHERETO, then ABSTRACT which contains the opcode 1w s0, 0(DATA) to load s0 from DATA[0]. Opcodes in ABSTRACT are constructed by DM hardware from command. If command.transfer=0, no register transfer is done and instead ABSTRACT[0] reads as NOP.
- 7. If a register read/write is all that is needed, the debugger would set command.postexec to 0. ABSTRACT[1] would then read as EBREAK.
- 8. If command.postexec=1, ABSTRACT[1] reads as NOP and execution falls through to PROGBUF which will have been previously written by the debugger with the opcodes lw s0, 0(s0), then sw s0, DATA(zero), then EBREAK.
- 9. EBREAK reenters ROM at address 0x800. ROM writes hartid to HALTED which has the side effect of clearing busy, telling the debugger that the abstract command is finished.
- 10. The debugger reads the result from DATA[0].

The autoexec feature of Abstract Commands is supported by SiFive hardware (and is used by OpenOCD for memory block read and write). Once an abstract command has been completed, the debugger can read or write a particular DATA or PROGBUF location to run the command again. For example, fast download can be accomplished by setting up PROGBUF for memory write, then repeatedly writing words to DATA[0]. Each write re-executes the register transfer and PROGBUF to store the word into memory. For a 32-bit block write, the abstract command would be set up like this:

ABSTRACT	regno=s1, write	=1, transfer=1, postexec=1. DM constructs the instructions
		<pre>// load s1 from debugger // fall thru to PROGBUF</pre>
PROGBUF		<pre>// store s1 to memory // increment memory pointer // done</pre>

Table 152: Abstract Command Example for 32-bit Block Write

14.5.10 Multi-core Synchronization

The DM is configured with one Halt Group that may be programmed to synchronize execution between harts, or between hart(s) and external logic, such as a cross-trigger matrix. The Halt Group is configured using the dmcs2 register.

Hart Array

The Hart Array is an internal bitmap that selects a subset of the harts in a system. Debug operations such as resume and halt are automatically applied to all the selected harts simultaneously.

To configure the Hart Array:

- 1. Set the hasel bit in the Debug Module dmcontrol register.
- 2. Set bits in the hawindow register corresponding to the harts to be selected. Bit 0 = hart 0, Bit 1 = hart 1, etc.

The Hart Array covers debug operations initiated by the debugger but does not cover the case when harts halt due to other causes, such as breakpoints. This is handled with a Halt Group.

14.5.11 System Bus Access

System Bus Access (SBA) provides an alternative method to access memory. SBA operation conforms to *The RISC-V Debug Specification, Version 1.0* and its description is not duplicated here. It implements a bus master that connects with the bus crossbar to allow access to the device's physical address space without involving a hart to perform accesses. SBA is controlled

from the DMI using registers in the range 0x37 - 0x3F. By default, the maximum bus width supported by SBA is 64. Comparing Program Buffer memory access and SBA:

Program Buffer Memory Access	SBA Memory Access
Physical Address	Physical Address
Subject to Physical Memory Protection (PMP)	Not subject to PMP
Cache coherent	Cache coherent
Hart must be halted	Hart may be halted or running

Table 153: System Bus vs. Program Buffer Comparison

14.6 Debug Module Operational Sequences

The sections below describe the flow for entering into and exiting from debug mode. The user can halt and resume more than one hart at a time using the hart array mask.

14.6.1 Entering Debug Mode

To use debug mode, the DM must be enabled by writing 0x0000_0001 to dmcontrol.

The debugger can request a halt by writing 0x8000_0001 to dmcontrol to set haltreq. This generates a debug interrupt to the core.

The core enters debug mode and jumps to the debug interrupt handler located at 0×800 and serviced from the DM.

ROM code at 0x800 writes hartid into the HALTED register which has the effect of setting the halted bit for this hart. Halted bits are readable from the debugger and generally will be continually polled to check for breakpoints when a hart is running.

ROM code then busy-waits checking its hart-specific FLAGS register.

14.6.2 Exiting Debug Mode

The debugger writes 1 to resumereq in the dmcontrol register to restart execution. This clears resumeack and sets bit 1 of the FLAGS register for the selected hart.

The ROM busy-wait loop being executed by hart n sees FLAGS[n].resume set.

ROM code writes hartid to RESUMING, which has the effect of clearing FLAGS[n].resume, setting resumeack, and clearing halted for the hart.

ROM code then executes dret which returns to user code at the address currently in dpc.

The debugger sees resumeack and knows the resume was successful.

Appendix A

SiFive Core Complex Configuration Options

This section provides a reference of the key configuration options of the SiFive S7 Series cores and the larger Core Complex. The file docs/core_complex_configuration.txt lists the features and options configured in the S76-MC Core Complex.

A.1 S7 Series

The S7 Series comes with the following set of configuration options. Note that the configuration may be limited to a fixed set of discrete options.

Modes and ISA:

- Configurable number of Cores (1 to 8). In the case where more than one core is selected, all cores are configured the same.
- Optional support for RISC-V user mode
- · Optional M, F, D, B, and Zfh extensions
 - If M extension, configurable performance (1-cycle or 4-cycle)
- Optional SiFive Custom Instruction Extension (SCIE)

On-Chip Memory:

- Optional Instruction Cache with configurable size (4 KiB to 64 KiB) and associativity (2-, 4-, or 8-way)
- Optional Instruction-Tightly Integrated Memory (ITIM) with configurable size (4 KiB to 256 KiB) and base address
- Data Tightly-Integrated Memory (DTIM) or Data Cache:
 - If DTIM, then configurable size (4 KiB to 256 KiB) and base address
 - If Data Cache, then configurable size (4 KiB to 256 KiB) and associativity (2-, 4-, 8-, or 16-way)

- Optional Data Local Store (DLS) with the following options:
 - Configurable size (4 KiB to 8 MiB)
 - Configurable base address
 - Configurable pipeline depth (0, 1, or 3 additional stages)
 - Configurable number of banks (1 to 64)
- Optional L2 Cache with the following options:
 - Configurable size (128 KiB to 4 MiB), associativity (2-, 4-, 8-, 16-, or 32-way), and banks (1, 2, or 4)
 - Configurable number of L2 Hardware Prefetcher streams (4, 8, or 16) and queue size (4, 8, 12, or 16)
 - Configurable L1 to L2 bus width (64-, 128-, or 256-bit)
- Optional Fast I/O
- Optional Address Remapper with the following options:
 - Configurable number of entries (4, 8, 16, 32, or 64)
 - "From" region with configurable size (power of 2 up to 64) and base address
 - "To" region with configurable size (power of 2 up to 64) and base address
 - Configurable remap entry size (4 B to "From" region size)
- Configurable number of MMIO registers (4 to 24)

Error Handling:

- Optional Bus-Error Unit (BEU)
- · Optional ECC support

Ports:

- Optional Memory Port, System Port, Peripheral Port, Front Port, Core Local Port, and Core Local Front Port
 - Each port has a configurable base address, width (32-, 64-, or 128-bit), size (64 KiB to 2 GiB), and protocol (AHB, AHB-Lite, APB, AXI4)
 - If AXI4 protocol, configurable AXI ID width (4, 8, or 16). Front, Memory, and System Ports only.
- Optional Front Port Passthrough

Security:

Optional Physical Memory Protection (PMP), configurable up to 16 regions

- · Optional Disable Debug Input
- Optional Password-protected Debug
- · Optional Public key based secure Debug
- Optional Hardware Cryptographic Accelerator (HCA) with the following options:
 - Configurable base address
 - Optional AES-128/192/256
 - Optional AES-MAC
 - Optional SHA-224/256/384/512
 - Optional True Random Number Generator (TRNG)
 - Optional Public Key Accelerator (PKA) with the following parameters:
 - Configurable PKA operation maximum width (256 or 384 bits)

SiFive Insight Debug and Trace:

- Optional Debug Module with the following options:
 - Configurable base address
 - Configurable debug interface (JTAG, cJTAG, or APB)
 - Configurable number of Hardware Breakpoints (0 to 16) and External Triggers (0 to 16)
 - Optional System Bus Access
- Configurable number of performance counters (0 to 8)
- Optional Raw Instruction Trace Port
- Optional Nexus Trace Encoder with the following options:
 - Optional Event Trace
 - Configurable Trace Encoder Format (BTM or HTM)
 - Trace Sink (SRAM, ATB Bridge, SWT, System Memory, and/or PIB)
 - If SRAM Sink, configurable Trace Buffer size (256 B to 64 KiB)
 - If PIB Sink, configurable width (1-, 2-, 3-, 5-, or 9-bit) and optional PIB clock input
 - Optional Timestamp capabilities with configurable width (40, 48, or 56 bits) and source (Bus Clock, Core Clock, or External)
 - External Trigger Inputs (0 to 8) and Outputs (0 to 8)
 - Optional Instrumentation Trace Component (ITC)
 - Optional PC Sampling

Interrupts:

- Optional Platform-Level Interrupt Controller (PLIC) with the following parameters:
 - Priority Levels (1 to 7)
 - Number of interrupts (1 to 511)
- A configurable number of Core-Local Interruptor (CLINT) interrupts (0 to 16)

Design For Test:

- Configurable SRAM user-defined inputs (0 to 1024)
- Configurable SRAM user-defined outputs (0 to 1024)
- Optional SRAM Macro Extraction
- · Optional Clock Gate Extraction
- · Optional Grouping and Wrapping of extracted macros

Note that the SRAM user-defined feature is mutually exclusive to the macro extraction features.

Clocks and Reset:

- · Optional Clock Gating
- Configurable Reset Scheme (Synchronous, Asynchronous, Full Asynchronous)

Branch Prediction:

Configurable Branch Prediction (Area- or Performance-Optimized)

RTL Options:

Optional custom RTL module name prefix

WorldGuard:

- · Optional WorldGuard support with the following options:
 - Configurable number of worlds (2 to 32) and base address
 - Optional, configurable WorldGuard PMPs, filters, markers, and ROM for various component

Appendix B

SiFive RISC-V Implementation Registers

This section provides a reference to the SiFive RISC-V implementation version registers marchid and mimpid.

B.1 Machine Architecture ID Register (marchid)

Value	Core Generator
0x8000_0007	6/7/P200/X200-Series Processor

Table 154: Core Generator Encoding of marchid

B.2 Machine Implementation ID Register (mimpid)

Value	Generator Release Version
0x0000_0000	Pre-19.02
0x2019_0228	19.02
0x2019_0531	19.05
0x2019_0919	19.08p0p0 / 19.08.00
0x2019_1105	19.08p1p0 / 19.08.01.00
0x2019_1204	19.08p2p0 / 19.08.02.00
0x2020_0423	19.08p3p0 / 19.08.03.00
0x0120_0626	19.08p4p0 / 19.08.04.00
0x0220_0515	koala.00.00-preview and koala.01.00-preview
0x0220_0603	koala.02.00-preview
0x0220_0630	20G1.03.00 / koala.03.00-general
0x0220_0710	20G1.04.00 / koala.04.00-general
0x0220_0826	20G1.05.00 / koala.05.00-general
0x0320_0908	kiwi.00.00-preview
0x0220_1013	20G1.06.00 / koala.06.00-general
0x0220_1120	20G1.07.00 / koala.07.00-general
0x0421_0205	llama.00.00-preview
0x0421_0324	21G1.01.00 / llama.01.00-general
0x0421_0427	21G1.02.00 / llama.02.00-general
0x0521_0528	mongoose.00.00-preview
0x0521_0714	21G2.01.00 / mongoose.01.00-general
0x0521_1008	21G2.02.00 / mongoose.02.00-general
0x0621_1027	narwhal.00.00-preview
0x0621_1203	narwhal.01.00-preview
0x0621_1222	21G3.02.00 / narwhal.02.00-general

Table 155: Generator Release Encoding of mimpid

Appendix C

SiFive Custom CSRs

This section provides a reference for the custom RISC-V CSRs configured in the S76-MC Core Complex.

CSR	Name	Notes
0x7C0	Branch Prediction Mode CSR	See Section 6.2.1 for more information
0x7C1	SiFive Feature Disable CSR	See Section 6.2.2 for more information
0x7C8	Power Dial CSR	See Section 13.2.1 for more information

Table 156: SiFive Custom CSRs

Appendix D

Floating-Point Unit Instruction Timing

This section provides a reference for the instruction timings of the single- and double-precision floating-point unit in the S76-MC Core Complex.

D.1 S7 Floating-Point Instruction Timing

Single-precision floating-point unit instruction latency and repeat rates are described in Table 157.

Assembly	Operation	Latency	Repeat Rate
	Sign Inject		
fabs.s rd, rs1	f[rd] = f[rs1]	2	1
fsgnj.s rd, rs1, rs2	f[rd] = {f[rs2][31], f[rs1][30:0]}	2	1
fsgnjn.s rd, rs1, rs2	f[rd] = {~f[rs2][31], f[rs1][30:0]}	2	1
fsgnjx.s rd, rs1, rs2	f[rd] = {f[rs1][31] ^ f[rs2][31],	2	1
	f[rs1][30:0]} Arithmetic		
fodd c rd rc1 rc2		5	1
fadd.s rd, rs1, rs2	f[rd] = f[rs1] + f[rs2]	5	1
fsub.s rd, rs1, rs2	f[rd] = f[rs1] - f[rs2]	9–36	8–33
fdiv.s rd, rs1, rs2	f[rd] = f[rs1] ÷ f[rs2]		
fmul.s rd, rs1, rs2	f[rd] = f[rs1] × f[rs2]	5	1
fsqrt.s rd, rs1	f[rd] = \f[rs1]	9–28	8–33
fmadd.s rd, rs1, rs2, rs3 fmsub.s rd, rs1, rs2, rs3	f[rd] = (f[rs1] × f[rs2]) + f[rs3] f[rd] = (f[rs1] × f[rs2]) - f[rs3]	5	1
1111500.5 10, 151, 152, 153	Negate Arithmetic		1
fneg.s rd, rs1	f[rd] = -f[rs1]	2	1
fnmadd.s rd, rs1, rs2, rs3	f[rd] = -(f[rs1] × f[rs2]) - f[rs3]	5	1
fnmsub.s rd, rs1, rs2, rs3	$f[rd] = -(f[rs1] \times f[rs2]) + f[rs3]$	5	1
11111300.3 10, 131, 132, 133	Compare		-
feg.s rd, rs1, rs2	x[rd] = f[rs1] == f[rs2]	4	1
fle.s rd, rs1, rs2	$x[rd] = f[rs1] \le f[rs2]$	4	1
flt.s rd, rs1, rs2	x[rd] = f[rs1] < f[rs2]	4	1
fmax.s rd, rs1, rs2	f[rd] = max(f[rs1], f[rs2])	2	1
fmin.s rd, rs1, rs2	f[rd] = min(f[rs1], f[rs2])	2	1
	Categorize	<u> </u>	
fclass.s rd, rs1	$x[rd] = classify_s(f[rs1])$	4	1
	Convert Data Type	·	
fcvt.w.s rd, rs1	$x[rd] = sext(s32_{f32}(f[rs1])$	4	1
fcvt.l.s rd, rs1	$x[rd] = s64_{f32}(f[rs1])$	N/A	N/A
fcvt.s.w rd, rs1	$f[rd] = f32_{s32}(x[rs1])$	2	1
fcvt.s.l rd, rs1	$f[rd] = f32_{s64}(x[rs1])$	N/A	N/A
fcvt.wu.s rd, rs1	$x[rd] = sext(u32_{f32}(f[rs1])$	4	1
fcvt.lu.s rd, rs1	$x[rd] = u64_{f32}(f[rs1])$	N/A	N/A
fcvt.s.wu rd, rs1	$f[rd] = f32_{u32}(x[rs1])$	2	1
fcvt.s.lu rd, rs1	$f[rd] = f32_{u64}(x[rs1])$	N/A	N/A
Move			
fmv.s rd, rs1	f[rd] = f[rs1]	2	1
fmv.w.x rd, rs1	f[rd] = x[rs1][31:0]	1	1
fmv.x.w rd, rs1	x[rd] = sext(f[rs1][31:0])	1	1
Load/Store			
flw rd, offset(rs1)	f[rd] = M[x[rs1] + sext(offset)][31:0]	1	1
fsw rs2, offset(rs1)	M[x[rs1] + sext(offset)] = f[rs2][31:0]	1	1

Table 157: S7 Single-Precision FPU Instruction Latency and Repeat Rates

Double-precision floating-point unit latency and repeat rates are described in Table 158.

Assembly	Operation	Latency	Repeat Rate	
	Sign Inject	<u>'</u>		
fabs.d rd, rs1	f[rd] = f[rs1]	2	1	
fsgnj.d rd, rs1, rs2	f[rd] = {f[rs2][63], f[rs1][62:0]}	2	1	
fsgnjn.d rd, rs1, rs2	f[rd] = {~f[rs2][63], f[rs1][62:0]}	2	1	
fsgnjx.d rd, rs1, rs2	f[rd] = {f[rs1][63] ^ f[rs2][63],	2	1	
	f[rs1][62:0]}			
	Arithmetic			
fadd.d rd, rs1, rs2	f[rd] = f[rs1] + f[rs2]	7	1	
fsub.d rd, rs1, rs2	f[rd] = f[rs1] - f[rs2]	7	1	
fdiv.d rd, rs1, rs2	$f[rd] = f[rs1] \div f[rs2]$	9–58	8–58	
fmul.d rd, rs1, rs2	$f[rd] = f[rs1] \times f[rs2]$	7	1	
fsqrt.d rd, rs1	$f[rd] = \sqrt{f[rs1]}$	9–57	8–58	
fmadd.d rd, rs1, rs2, rs3	$f[rd] = (f[rs1] \times f[rs2]) + f[rs3]$	7	1	
fmsub.d rd, rs1, rs2, rs3	$f[rd] = (f[rs1] \times f[rs2]) - f[rs3]$	7	1	
	Negate Arithmetic			
fneg.d rd, rs1	f[rd] = -f[rs1]	2	1	
fnmadd.d rd, rs1, rs2, rs3	$f[rd] = -(f[rs1] \times f[rs2]) - f[rs3]$	7	1	
fnmsub.d rd, rs1, rs2, rs3	$f[rd] = -(f[rs1] \times f[rs2]) + f[rs3]$	7	1	
	Compare			
feq.d rd, rs1, rs2	x[rd] = f[rs1] == f[rs2]	4	1	
fle.d rd, rs1, rs2	$x[rd] = f[rs1] \le f[rs2]$	4	1	
flt.d rd, rs1, rs2	x[rd] = f[rs1] < f[rs2]	4	1	
fmax.d rd, rs1, rs2	f[rd] = max(f[rs1], f[rs2])	2	1	
fmin.d rd, rs1, rs2	f[rd] = min(f[rs1], f[rs2])	2	1	
	Categorize			
fclass.d rd, rs1	$x[rd] = classify_d(f[rs1])$	4	1	
	Convert Data Type			
fcvt.w.d rd, rs1	$x[rd] = sext(s32_{f64}(f[rs1])$	4	1	
fcvt.l.d rd, rs1	$x[rd] = s64_{f64}(f[rs1])$	N/A	N/A	
fcvt.d.w rd, rs1	$f[rd] = f64_{s32}(x[rs1])$	2	1	
fcvt.d.l rd, rs1	$f[rd] = f64_{S64}(x[rs1])$	N/A	N/A	
fcvt.wu.d rd, rs1	$x[rd] = sext(u32_{f64}(f[rs1])$	4	1	
fcvt.lu.d rd, rs1	$x[rd] = u64_{f64}(f[rs1])$	N/A	N/A	
fcvt.d.wu rd, rs1	$f[rd] = f64_{u32}(x[rs1])$	2	1	
fcvt.d.lu rd, rs1	$f[rd] = f64_{U64}(x[rs1])$	N/A	N/A	
fcvt.s.d rd, rs1	$f[rd] = f32_{f64}(f[rs1])$	2	1	
fcvt.d.s rd, rs1	f[rd] = f64 _{f32} (f[rs1])	2	1	
Move				
fmv.d rd, rs1	f[rd] = f[rs1]	2	1	
fmv.d.x rd, rs1	f[rd] = x[rs1][63:0]	N/A	N/A	
fmv.x.d rd, rs1	x[rd] = f[rs1][63:0]	N/A	N/A	
IIIIV.A.U IU, ISI	Load/Store	IN/A	18/7	
fld rd, offset(rs1)	f[rd] = M[x[rs1] + sext(offset)][63:0]	1	1	
fsd rs2, offset(rs1)	M[x[rs1] + sext(offset)] = f[rs2][63:0]	1	1	

Table 158: S7 Double-Precision FPU Instruction Latency and Repeat Rates

^{*}Instruction and data are in the ITIM and DTIM, respectively.

Appendix E

Revision History

This section describes the changes in this document between release versions.

Version	Date	Document Changes
21G3.02.00	December 22, 2021	Initial release

Table 159: S76-MC Core Complex Manual Revision History

Appendix F

Knowledge Base Articles

The SiFive support team provides access to an index of Knowledge Base articles in order to further assist users developing with and integrating their RISC-V IP. These articles focus on topics ranging from architectural design and software development to board bring-up and implementation.

To view more than 100 articles in the SiFive Knowledge Base, access the link below:

https://sifive.atlassian.net/servicedesk/customer/portal/47/article/465732086

References

Visit the SiFive forums for support and answers to frequently asked questions: https://forums.sifive.com

- [1] A. Waterman and K. Asanovic, Eds., The RISC-V Instruction Set Manual, Volume I: User-Level ISA, Version 2.2, June 2019. [Online]. Available: https://riscv.org/specifications/
- [2] ——, The RISC-V Instruction Set Manual Volume II: Privileged Architecture, Version 1.11, June 2019. [Online]. Available: https://riscv.org/specifications/privileged-isa/
- [3] SiFive TileLink Specification Version 1.8.0, August 2019. [Online]. Available: https://sifive.com/documentation/tilelink/tilelink-spec
- [4] A. Chang, D. Barbier, and P. Dabbelt, RISC-V Platform-Level Interrupt Controller (PLIC) Specification. [Online]. Available: https://github.com/riscv/plic-spec
- [5] E. Edgar and T. Newsome, Eds., RISC-V Debug Support, Version 1.0, May 2021. [Online]. Available: https://github.com/riscv/riscv-debug-spec
- [6] RISC-V Bit-Manipulation ISA-extensions, Version 1.0, June 2021. [Online]. Available: https://github.com/riscv/riscv-bitmanip/releases/tag/1.0.0